ŠKODA

ŠKODA Superb Owner's Manual



Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index
The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

- Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
- ■ Denotes the end of a section.
- ▶ Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
- STOP Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Denotes a registered trademark.
- i Denotes the display in the information display.
- S Denotes the display in the segment display.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.
You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer) ▶

On-board literature
The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this "**owner's manual**" as well as a "**service schedule**" and the "**Help on the road**" brochure.

Depending on the vehicle model and equipment, other additional operating manuals and instructions may be provided (e.g. an operating manual for the radio).

If one of the documents listed above is missing, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- "Specialist" garage - a company that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles
- "ŠKODA service partner" - a company that is contractually authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. to carry out service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles
- "ŠKODA Partners" - a company that is authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. to sell ŠKODA products or carry out service work, or to carry out these tasks in parallel

The owner's manual
This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, this vehicle **does not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this owner's manual.

The level of equipment of your vehicle refers to your purchase contract of the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner from whom you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

The service schedule:
- Contains vehicle data including information on service work carried out;
- Is intended as proof of services carried out;
- Is intended for records relating to the mobility warranty (only valid for some countries);
- Serves as a warranty certificate from the ŠKODA Partner where your vehicle was purchased.

Therefore please always present the service schedule when you take your vehicle to a specialist garage.

If the service schedule is missing or in poor condition, please contact the specialist garage that regularly services your vehicle. You will need to request a duplicate, in which the specialist garage will confirm the service work previously carried out.

The Help on the road brochure
The Help on the road brochure contains the most important emergency telephone numbers as well as telephone numbers and contact addresses of ŠKODA Partners in the various different countries.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Using the system

Cockpit 7
Overview 6

Instruments and Indicator Lights 8
Instrument cluster 8
Warning lights 13

Information system 22
Driver information system 22
Driving data (multifunction display) 22
MAXI DOT (information display) 26

Unlocking and opening 29
Unlocking and locking 29
KESSY 34
Anti-theft alarm system 35
Tailgate 36
Electric tailgate (Superb Combi) 38
Electric power windows 41
Electric sliding/tilting roof 44
Panoramic sunroof (Superb Combi) 45

Lights and visibility 48
Lights 48
Interior lights 54
Boot light (Combi) 56
Visibility 58
Windscreen wipers and washers 59
Rear mirror 62

Seats and useful equipment 65
Adjusting the seats 65
Seat features 69
Practical features 73
Boot 82
Variable loading floor in the boot 88
Extending variable load floor with integrated aluminium strips and fasteners (Superb Combi) 89
Net partition (Superb Combi) 92
Roof rack system 93

The air conditioning system 95
Heating, ventilation and cooling 95
Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system) 97
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system) 100
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 103

Communication and multimedia 106
General information 106
Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II 109
Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III 112
Wi-Fi 116
Voice control 120
Multimedia 124

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 128
Steering 128
Starting and stopping the engine using the key 129
Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY 131
Braking 134
Manual gear changing and pedals 136
Automatic transmission 136
Running in 140
Economical driving and environmental sustainability 140
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 144
Driving abroad 145

Assist systems 147
Brake assist systems 147
Parking aid 149
Park assist 151
Cruise control system 155
START-STOP 156
Fatigue detection (break recommendation) 158

Towing a trailer 160
Towing device 160
Trailer 163

Safety

Passive Safety 167
General information 167
Correct seated position 168

Seat belts 171
Using seat belts 171
Inertia reels and belt tensioners 174

Airbag system 176
Description of the airbag system 176
Airbag overview 177
Deactivating airbags 181

Transporting children safely 184
Child seat 184
Fastening systems 186

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle 189
Washing your vehicle 189
Taking care of your vehicle exterior 190
Taking care of the interior 194
Modifications, repairs and technical alterations 196

Inspecting and replenishing 199
Fuel 199
Engine compartment 201
Engine oil 204
Coolant 207
Brake fluid 208
Vehicle battery 209

Wheels 214
Tyres and wheel rims 214
Winter operation 220

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help 221
Emergency equipment 221
Changing a wheel 222
Tyre repair 226
Jump-starting 228
Towing the vehicle 230
Radio remote control 232
Emergency unlocking/locking 233
Emergency operation of the sliding/tilting roof 235
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 236

Fuses and light bulbs 237
Fuses 237
Bulbs 241

Technical data

Technical data 245
Vehicle data 245

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
AHL	Adaptive headlights
AG	Automatic gearbox
APN	Access Point Name - the name of an access point for the WiFi network
TCS	Traction control
CO_2 in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
FSI	Stratified petrol direct injection
GSM	Groupe Spécial Mobile - a digital network of mobile devices for the transmission of voice and data
HFP	Hands-free profile - connection of a mobile device by means of its Bluetooth® profile
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
MFD	Multifunction display
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	Personal Identification Number - personal identification number for the connection of electronic devices using Bluetooth® or WiFi
rSAP	Remote SIM Access Profile - remote transmission of SIM data
SSP	simple security pairing - connection of two devices using Bluetooth® profile
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TDI PD	Diesel engine with injection system and unit injector injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection
UMTS	Universal Mobile Telecommunication System - the next evolution of the GSM network (3G)
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network - wireless connection of electronic devices for data transfer (WiFi)

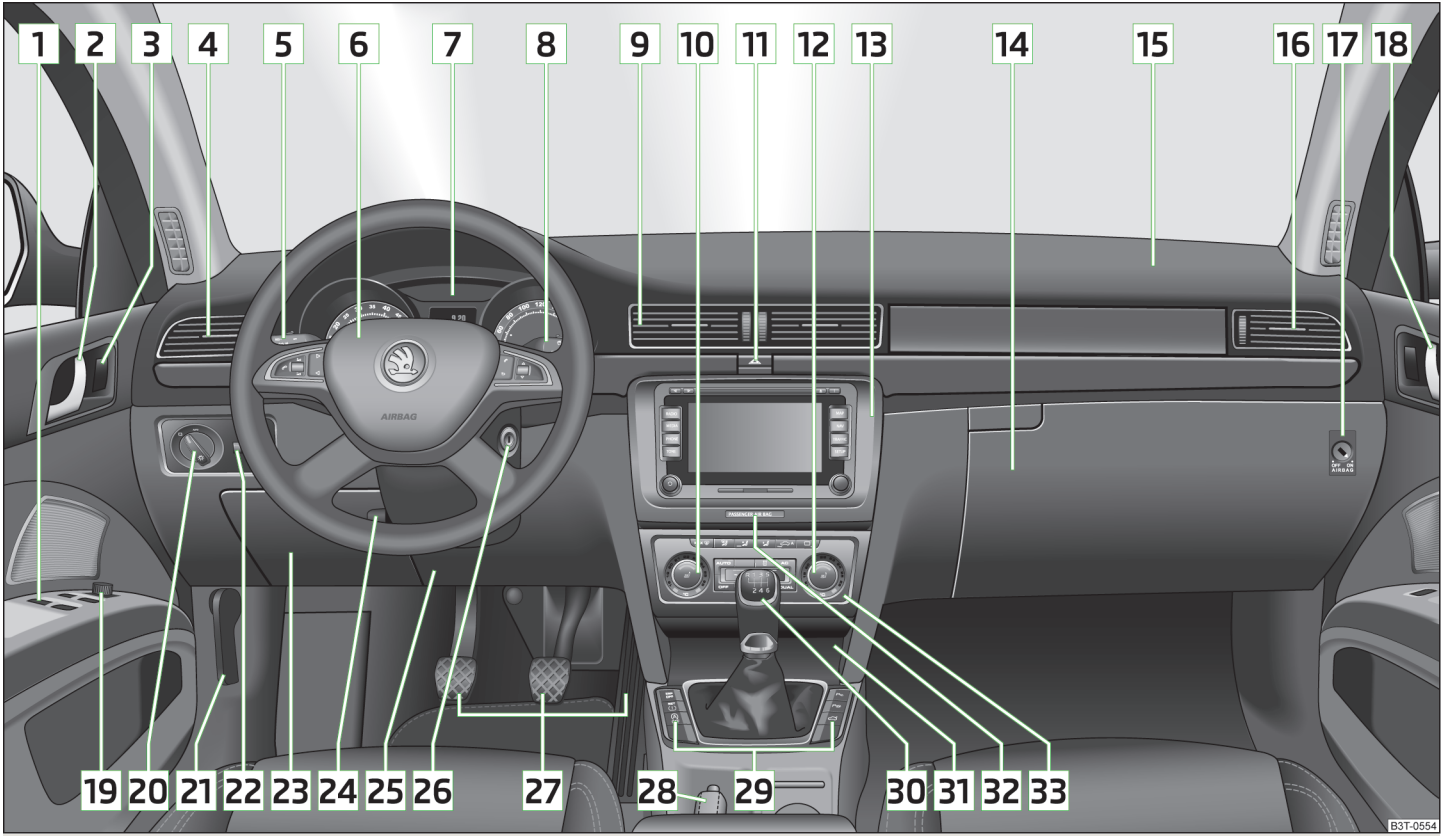


Fig. 1 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electric windows — 41
2 Door opening lever on the driver's side — 34
3 Central locking system — 33
4 Air outlet vent on the driver's side — 96
5 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 50
› Speed regulating system — 155
6 Steering wheel:
› With horn
› With driver's front airbag — 178
› with pushbuttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone — 107, 124
7 Instrument cluster: Instruments and indicator lights — 8
8 Operating lever:
› Information system — 22
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 59
9 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 96
10 Regulator for front left seat heating — 69
11 Button for hazard warning light system — 53
12 Regulator for front right seat heating — 69
13 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Radio
› Navigation system
14 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 79
15 Front passenger airbag — 178
16 Air outlet vent on the front passenger side — 96
17 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 182
18 Door opening lever on the front passenger side — 34
19 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 64
20 Light switch — 48
21 Bonnet release lever — 203
22 Regulator for the instrument lighting and regulator for the headlight beam range adjustment — 49, 49
23 Storage compartment on the driver's side — 74
24 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 129
25 Driver's knee airbag — 179
26 Ignition lock — 130
27 Pedals — 136
28 Handbrake — 135
29 Bars with buttons depending on the equipment fitted:
› START STOP — 156
› Tyre control display — 19
› Traction control TCS — 148
› Electronic Stability Control ESC — 147
› Park Assist — 151
› Parking aid — 149
› Tailgate operation (Superb Combi) — 39
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 136
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 136
31 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Ashtrays — 76
› Storage compartment — 74
32 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 182
33 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 97
› Operating controls for Climatronic — 100

Note

The arrangement of the controls and switches and the location of some items on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 1. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview 8
Engine revolutions counter 9
Speedometer 9
Coolant temperature display 9
Display 10
Fuel gauge 10
Counter for distance driven 10
Service Interval Display 11
Digital clock 12
Display in rear centre console 12
Auto Check Control 12

Fault display
If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the **Error** message will appear in the display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible by a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the controls in the instrument cluster while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

Overview

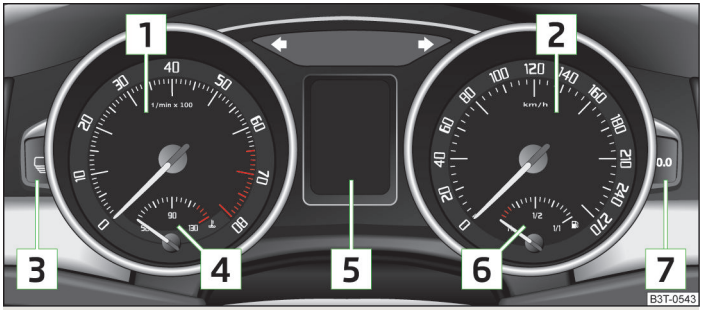


Fig. 2 **Instrument cluster**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

1 Revolutions counter with warning lights » page 9
2 Speedometer with warning lights » page 9
3 Button for display mode:
› Setting the hours/minutes
› Activating/deactivating the second speed in mph or km/h
› Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next service
4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 9
5 Display:
› With counter for distance driven » page 10
› With service interval display » page 11
› With digital clock » page 12
› With multifunction display » page 22
› With information system » page 22
6 Fuel gauge » page 10
7 Button for:
› Reset trip counter for the distance driven
› Set hours/minutes
› Activate/deactivate display mode

Engine revolutions counter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The red scale of the rev counter 1 » Fig. 2 on page 8 indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed. The system automatically restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next higher gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

Follow the recommended gear to prevent engine speeds that are too high or too low » page 22.

For the sake of the environment

Correct shifting up has the following advantages.
- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Speedometer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

Warning against excessive speeds
An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h[1]. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

[1] This function is only valid for some countries.

Coolant temperature display

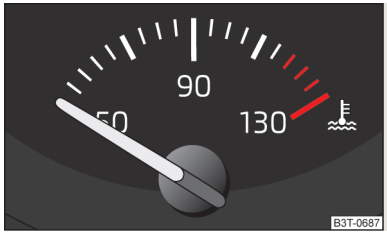


Fig. 3
Coolant temperature gauge

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The coolant temperate display » Fig. 3 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Cold range
If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range
If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 15.

CAUTION

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.

Display

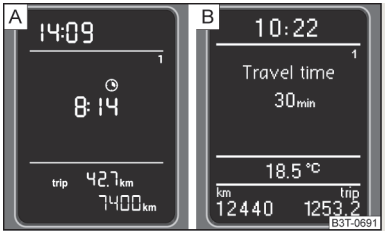


Fig. 4
Display types

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The instrument cluster can have one of the following types of display » Fig. 4.

A Segment display
B Information display

CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Fuel gauge

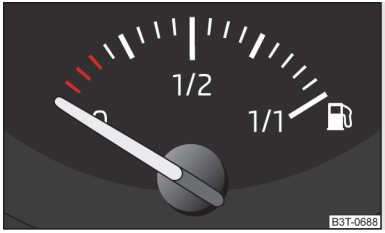


Fig. 5
Fuel gauge

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The fuel gauge » Fig. 5 only operates if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 60 litres. The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the pointer reaches the reserve marking » page 19 .

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.

Counter for distance driven

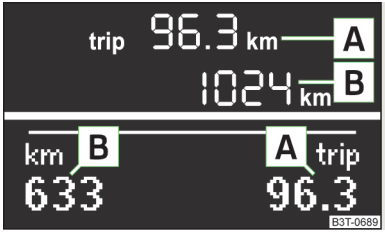


Fig. 6
Segment display/information display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

Daily trip counter (trip)
The daily trip counter A » Fig. 6 indicates the distance which you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

Reset trip counter for the distance driven
› Press and hold the 7 » Fig. 2 on page 8 button.

Odometer
The odometer B » Fig. 6 indicates the total distance the vehicle has travelled.

Note

For vehicles fitted with the information display, if the display of the second speed is activated in mph or km/h, this driving speed is indicated instead of the counter for the total distance driven.

Service Interval Display



Fig. 7
Service Interval Display: Note

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The display can vary depending on the equipment.

Before the next service interval is reached, a key symbol and the kilometres and days remaining until the next service is due are shown for about 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on » Fig. 7.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

Oil change service
An **oil change service** is due if the display shows the number **1** at the point marked by the arrow » Fig. 7.

The following message appears in the information display.

Oil change in ... km or ... days.

As soon as the due date for the service is reached, a flashing key symbol and in the display for around 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on the following text appears.

Oil change now!
OILCHNG

Inspection
An **inspection** is due if the display shows the number **2** at the point marked by the arrow » Fig. 7.

The following message appears in the information display.

Inspection in ... km or ... days.

As soon as the due date for the service is reached, a flashing key symbol and in the display for around 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on the following text appears.

Inspection now!
INSPEC_

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can use the button 3 to display the remaining distance and days until the next service interval » Fig. 2 on page 8.

A key symbol and the remaining distance appear in the display for 10 seconds. The days remaining until the next service interval are displayed at the same time.

In vehicles equipped with the information display, this display can be called up from the **Settings** menu » page 27.

The following message will be displayed in the information display for 10 seconds:

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

Note

- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- For more information on the service intervals, see » *Service schedule*, chapter *Service intervals*.

Digital clock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The clock is set with the buttons 3 and 7 » Fig. 2 on page 8.

Select the display that you wish to change with the button 3 and carry out the change with the button 7.

In vehicles equipped with the information display, it is also possible to set the clock in the **Time** menu » page 27.

Display in rear centre console



Fig. 8
Centre console at rear: Display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

The time and the outside temperature is displayed on the display in the rear centre console when the ignition is switched on » Fig. 8.

The values are taken over by the instrument cluster.

Auto Check Control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 8.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on and also while driving.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the information display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the symbols in the information display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 13.

The **Vehicle status** menu item is displayed in the menu if there is at least one error message. After selecting this menu the first of the error messages is displayed. Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning symbols

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 14
	Clutches of the automatic gearbox are too hot	» page 12
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor faulty	» page 16
	Thickness of brake pads	» page 20
	Problem with engine oil pressure	» page 12

Clutches of the automatic gearbox are too hot
A symbol in the information display indicates that the temperature of the clutches of the automatic gearbox is too high.

The following message appears in the information display.

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the light goes out – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

Problem with the engine oil pressure
If the symbol is shown in the information display, you must have your vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage. The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

! WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.

Note

- If warning messages are shown in the information display, these messages must be confirmed with the button B » Fig. 12 on page 26 on the windscreen wiper lever or with the adjustment wheel D on the multifunction steering wheel to call up the main menu.
- As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 13
Braking system 14
Seat belt warning light 14
Generator 14
Open door 14
Engine oil pressure 14
Coolant temperature/coolant level 15
Bonnet 15
Tailgate 15
Power steering/steering lock (KESSY system) 16
Engine oil level 16
Traction Control System (TCS) 16
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 17
Antilock brake system (ABS) 17
The rear fog light 17
Bulb failure 17
Adaptive headlights 18
Exhaust inspection system 18
Glow plug system (diesel engine) 18
EPC fault light (petrol engine) 18
Diesel particle filter (diesel engine) 18
Fuel reserve 19
Airbag system 19
Tyre control display 19
Windscreen washer fluid level 20
Brake pad thickness 20
Turn signal system 20
Low beam 20
Fog lights 20
Cruise control system 20
Selector lever lock/starting (KESSY system) 20
Main beam 21

The indicator lights show certain functions/faults and may be accompanied by audible signals.

WARNING

- If illuminated indicator lights and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes are not observed, this may result in severe injuries or major vehicle damage.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is essential to observe safety notes » page 201, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light (P) comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 6 km/h.

The following message appears in the information display.

Release parking brake!

Braking system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light illuminates if the brake fluid level is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message appears in the information display.

Brake fluid: Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 209 » !.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 201, *Engine compartment*.
- If the warning light is displayed simultaneously with warning light » page 17, *Antilock brake system (ABS)* **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt. The indicator light only goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened his seat belt.

If the seat belt has not been fastened by the driver or front passenger, a permanent warning signal sounds at vehicle speeds greater than 20 km/h and simultaneously the indicator light flashes.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next 90 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the indicator light lights up permanently.

Generator

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

If the indicator light lights up when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek help from a specialist garage. The electrical system requires checking.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53, *Hazard warning light system*.

CAUTION

If the warning light (cooling system fault) comes on in addition to the warning light when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and switch the engine off – there is a risk of engine damage!

Open door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on, if one or several doors are opened.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.

Engine oil pressure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

When the indicator light is flashing, the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message appears in the information display.

Oil pressure: Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 206.

Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the indicator light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.

Coolant temperature/coolant level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

If the indicator light lights up or flashes, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

The following message appears in the information display.

Check coolant! Owner's manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the level of the coolant » page 208, and refill the coolant if necessary » page 208.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the radiator fan. Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 239, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

Do not continue driving if the warning light does not go off even if the coolant level is correct and the fuse for the fan is in working order!

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.
- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

Bonnet

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on if the bonnet is unlocked.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.

Tailgate

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on if the boot lid is opened.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.

Power steering/steering lock (KESSY system)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

Power steering
If the indicator light lights up, this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater. Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the indicator light lights up, this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). Seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock (KESSY system)
- While the indicator light is flashing, the steering lock cannot be released. Further information » page 34, *KESSY*.
- If the warning light flashes, a signal tone sounds, and the following message appears in the information display **Steering column lock: Workshop!)**, the electrical steering lock is faulty. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- If the warning light flashes, a beep sounds and the information display the message **Steering lock defective** appears, then the electric steering lock is broken. Park the car, **do not continue the journey**. After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. radio, navigation system), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the yellow indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. The indicator light must go out after driving a short distance. Visit a specialist garage if the yellow warning light stays on after having started the engine again and driving a short distance.

Engine oil level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light lights up (oil quantity too low)

The following message appears in the information display.

Check oil level!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 206.

The indicator light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the indicator light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

The indicator light flashes (engine oil level sensor faulty)

The following message appears in the information display.

Oil sensor: Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the indicator light flashes several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.

Traction Control System (TCS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light flashes to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the indicator light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ASR can be switched off for technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the indicator light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message appears in the information display.

Error: Traction control (TCS),

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 148, *Traction Control System (ASR)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. The indicator light should go out after driving a short distance.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 13.

The indicator light flashes to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the indicator light comes on immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the indicator light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ESR is fully functional again.

If the warning light lights up there is a fault in the ESC system.

The following message appears in the information display.

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 147, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. The indicator light must go out after driving a short distance.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 13.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message appears in the information display.

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 53.
- If the warning light » page 14is displayed together with warning light **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

The rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 13.

The warning light comes on when the rear fog lights are operating » page 52.

Bulb failure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 13.

The indicator light comes on if a bulb is faulty:
› within a few seconds of the ignition being switched on;
› when switching on the defective light bulb.

In the information display, for example, the following message appears.

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

Adaptive headlights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

If the indicator light flashes for 1 minute while driving or after switching on the ignition, there is a problem with the adaptive headlights » page 51.

Exhaust inspection system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. The engine can be started immediately after the pre-glow indicator light goes out.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the indicator light **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the indicator light begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

EPC fault light (petrol engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

If the indicator light EPC lights up, there is a fault in the engine control. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Diesel particle filter (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the indicator light lights up, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter.

In order to clean the diesel particulate filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, the vehicle should be driven at an even speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of 1 800 - 2 500 rpm for at least 15 minutes or until the warning light goes out with the 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position S) when the traffic situation permits it.

The indicator light only goes out after the diesel particulate filter has been successfully cleaned.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the indicator light does not go out and the indicator light begins to flash.

The following message appears in the information display.

Diesel particulate filter: Owner's manual!

The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light also lights up.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park in areas where the hot filter can come into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials – there is the risk of fire!
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the indicator light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

As long as the indicator light lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles, we recommend that regularly driving over short distances should be avoided.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA service partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 13.

The indicator light will come on if the fuel level is less than 9 litres.

The following message appears in the information display.

Please refuel. Range: ... km

Note

The text in the information display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 13.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following message appears in the information display.

Error: Air bag

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

If a front, side or head airbag or belt tensioner has been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

› The indicator light lights up for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for around 12 seconds.

The following message appears in the information display.

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.

If the air bag was switched off using the key-operated switch on the side of the dash panel on the passenger side:

› The indicator light comes on for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

› The deactivated air bag is indicated by the illumination of the warning light » page 182PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF in the middle of the dash panel .

WARNING

If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

Tyre control display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 13.

The indicator light lights up, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » page 215, *Service life of tyres*.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the system.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 217, *Tyre pressure monitor*.

Note

If the battery has been disconnected, the indicator light illuminates after the ignition is switched on. The indicator light must go out after driving a short distance.

Windscreen washer fluid level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the indicator light comes on. Top up with liquid » page 204, *Windscreen washer system*.

The following message appears in the information display.

Top up wash fluid!

Brake pad thickness

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

If the indicator light is slit, the brake pads are worn.

The following message appears in the information display.

Check brake wear!

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Turn signal system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

Either the left or right indicator light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If a turn signal light fails, the indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate.

Switching off the hazard indicator light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both indicator lights to flash.

Further information » page 50, *Turn signal and main beam*.

Low beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on when low beam is selected » page 48.

Fog lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on when the fog lights are operating » page 52.

Cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on when the cruise control is operating » page 155.

Selector lever lock/starting (KESSY system)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

If the indicator light lights up, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary to move the selector lever from position **P** and **N** » page 138or to start the engine in vehicles with the KESSY system » page 133.

Main beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The indicator light comes on when the main beam or headlight flasher are selected » page 50.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Recommended gear 22
Door, boot lid and bonnet warning 22

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

Recommended gear

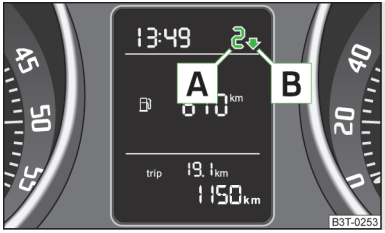


Fig. 9
Recommended gear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

The currently engaged gear A is shown in the instrument cluster display » Fig. 9.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

If the system recognises that it is beneficial to change gear, an arrow B is shown in the display. The arrow points up or down, depending on whether you should shift into a higher or lower gear.

In vehicles with **manual transmission**, the recommended gear is displayed at the same time instead of the gear selected A.

CAUTION

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Door, boot lid and bonnet warning

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

If at least one door, the boot or the bonnet is **open**, the information display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet with a vehicle symbol.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h.

Driving data (multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Select Information 23
Information overview 23
Memory 24
Warning against excessive speeds 25

The multifunction display only operates if the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

The multi-function display can be shown in the segment display as well as in the information display » page 10 .

On vehicles with an information display, there is an option to fade out some of the information.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road. Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface – warning, drive with care!

Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.
- The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated.

Select Information

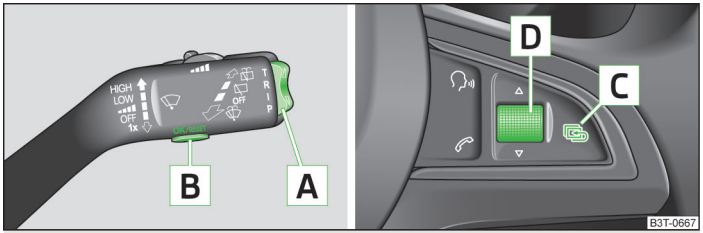


Fig. 10 **Buttons (adjustment wheel) on the operating lever/multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

Select information in the Segment Display

› Briefly press the rocker switch A up or down » Fig. 10.

Select information in the information display

› From the main menu of the information display choose the menu **MFD** » page 26.

› Briefly press the rocker switch A up or down » Fig. 10.

or

› Turn the adjustment wheel D upwards or downwards » Fig. 10.

Information overview

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

Outside temperature

The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C, a snow flake symbol (warning signal for ice on the road) appears before the temperature indicator and an audible signal will sound. After pressing the rocker switch A » Fig. 10 on page 23 or the button C, the function shown last is indicated.

Driving time

The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display » page 24, *Memory*. If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 24, *Memory*.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes and on vehicles which are fitted with an information display, it is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption level is shown in the display in litres/100 km[1]. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[2].

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.

[2] On some models in certain countries, - -.- km/ltr. is displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in litres/100 km[1] » page 24, *Memory*.

To determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero using button B » page 24, *Memory* . After erasing the memory, no value appears in the display until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range
The estimated range in kilometres is shown on the display. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), the fuel consumption of 10 ltr./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is adapted accordingly to the style of driving.

Distance travelled
The distance driven since the memory was last erased, appears in the display » page 24, *Memory*. If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 24, *Memory*.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km or 9 999 km on vehicles with an information display. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour » page 24, *Memory*. To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » page 24, *Memory*.

After erasing the memory, no value appears in the display until you have driven approx. 300 m.

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current speed
The current speed which is identical to the display of the speedometer 2 » Fig. 2 on page 8 is indicated on the display.

Oil temperature
If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, only - -.- is displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds
The warning that the speed limit is being exceeded can be enabled / disabled » page 25, *Warning against excessive speeds* in the display.

Memory



Fig. 11
Multifunction display: Preset

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

The multifunction display is equipped with two automatic memories. The selected memory is shown in the Display » Fig. 11.

Select memory
› Select one of the elements of the multi-function display » page 23, *Select Information*.
› Press the button B » Fig. 10 on page 23 or the adjustment wheel D briefly.

Reseting

› Select one of the elements of the multi-function display » page 23, *Select Information*.
› Select the desired memory.
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 10 on page 23 or adjustment wheel D.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time

Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition. If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total trip memory collates the data from any number of individual trips up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes, or 1999 km distance or, for vehicles with information display, 99 hours and 59 minutes, or 9999 km distance. The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

Note

All information in the memory **1** and **2** is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.

Warning against excessive speeds

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Press button A » Fig. 10 on page 23 or turn the adjustment wheel D to select the menu option **Speed warning** (Information display) or (Segment display).
› Press button B or the adjustment wheel D to activate the the speed limit settings options[1].
› Press button A or turn adjustment wheel D to set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Confirm the speed limit by pressing button B, or adjustment wheel D or wait around 5 seconds. Your settings will then be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be adjusted from 30 km/h to 250 km/h in 5 km/h increments.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Press button A » Fig. 10 on page 23 or turn the adjustment wheel D to select the menu option **Speed warning** (Information display) or (Segment display).
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Press the button B or the adjustment wheel D to accept the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to change the set speed limit, it is changed in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Confirm the speed limit by pressing button B or adjustment wheel D or wait around 5 seconds. Your settings will then be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit

› Press button A » Fig. 10 on page 23 or turn the adjustment wheel D to select the menu option **Speed warning** (Information display) or (Segment display).
› Press button B or adjustment wheel D to delete the speed limit.
› Press button B or adjustment wheel D again to activate change mode for the speed limit.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. At the same time the display shows the menu **Speed warning** (Information display) or (Segment display) with the set threshold.

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition.

[1] If no value is set the output value 30 km/h is automatically displayed.

MAXI DOT (information display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu 26
Settings 27

The information display provides you with information on the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information system also provides you with data relating to the radio, mobile phone, multifunction display, navigation system, the unit connected to the MDI port and the automatic gearbox » page 136.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Main menu

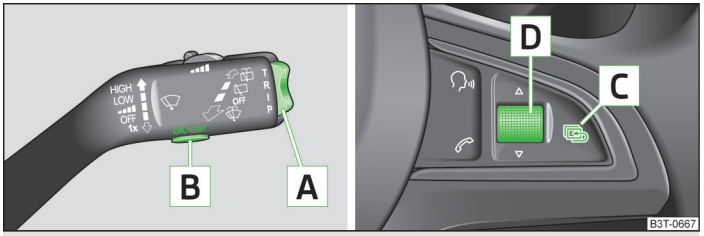


Fig. 12 **Information display: Control elements on the windscreen wiper lever/control elements on the multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 26.

Operating with the buttons on the windscreen wiper lever

› Press and hold rocker switch A » Fig. 12to activate the **MAIN MENU**.

› Individual menu items can be selected by means of the rocker switch A. When the pushbutton B is briefly pressed, the information you have selected is displayed.

Operating with the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel

› Press and hold button C » Fig. 12to activate the **MAIN MENU**.

› By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.

› The individual menu options can be selected by pressing the adjustment wheel D. The selected menu is displayed after briefly tapping the adjustment wheel D.

You can select the following menu options:

- **MFD** » page 22
- **Audi** » *Operating instructions for the radio*
- **Navigation** » *Operating instructions for the navigation system*
- **Phone** » page 106;
- **Aux. heating** » page 103
- **Assistants** » page 158
- **Vehicle status** » page 12
- **Settings** » page 27

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

The **Aux. heating** menu item is only displayed if the vehicle is equipped with factory-fitted auxiliary heating.

The menu item **Assistants** is only displayed if the vehicle is fitted with fatigue detection.

Note

- If warning messages are shown in the information display, these messages must be confirmed with the button B on the windscreen wiper lever or with the adjustment wheel D on the multifunction steering wheel to call up the main menu.
- If the information display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- The operation of the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is described in separate operating instructions to be found in the on-board literature.

Settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 26.

You can change certain settings by means of the information display. The current setting is shown on the information display in the respective menu at the top below the line.

You can select the following menu options:

Language
You can set the language for the warning and information texts here.

Automatic blind (Combi)
This is where the automatic roll-up function of the boot roll cover can be deactivated/activated when opening the boot lid.

MFD displays
Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Comfort
The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here:

Rain closing	Activate/deactivate the function for automatically closing the window and the tilt/slide sunroof in a locked vehicle when it starts raining[a]. If the function is set and it is not raining, the windows including the panoramic tilt/slide sunroof will close automatically after approx. 12 hours.
ATA confirm	Activate/deactivate the audible signalling the activation of the anti-theft alarm system.
Central locking	Activate/deactivate the central locking and automatic locking function, also applies to the KESSY system.
Window op.	Only convenience mode for the driver window or for all of the windows can be adjusted here.
Mirror down	Activate/deactivate the function for mirror lowering on the front passenger side when engaging the reverse gear[b].
Mirror adjust.	Activate/deactivate the function for left and right exterior mirror setting simultaneously.
Factory setting	Restore the Convenience factory setting.

[a] This function is only available on vehicles with a rain sensor.
[b] This function is only available on vehicles with an electrically adjustable driver seat.

Lights and Visibility
The following functions can be activated, deactivated or adjusted here:

Coming Home	Activate/deactivate and adjust the light duration of the COMING HOME function.
Leaving Home	Switch on/off and adjust the light duration of the LEAVING HOME function.
Footwell light	Activate/deactivate and adjust the footwell light intensity.
Daytime running lights	Activate/deactivate "DAY LIGHT" function.
Rear wiper	Activate/deactivate the function of the automatic rear window wiping.
Lane ch. flash	Activate/deactivate the lane ch. flash function.
Travel mode	Activate/deactivate the travel mode feature.
Factory setting	Restore the factory setting for the lighting.

Time
The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres
Here, you can set the speed at which an audible signal should sound. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle.

When exceeding the speed, the following is shown on the information display:

Winter tyres: max. speed ... km/h.

Units of measurement
The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Assistants
The tones of the audible signals for the parking aid can be adjusted here.

Alt. speed dis.
The display of the second speed in mph or in km/h can be switched on here.

Service
Here you can have the remaining kilometres and days until the next service interval displayed, and reset the Service Interval Display.

Factory setting
The information display is returned to its factory settings by selecting the **Factory setting** menu.

Note

If the information display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to the man settings **Settings** after approx. 10 seconds.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car key 30
Locking / unlocking with remote control 30
Unlocking/locking – KESSY 31
Safe securing system 32
Individual settings 32
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside 33
Child safety lock 33
Opening/closing a door 34

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and tailgate at the same time based on the current setting[1].

The safe securing system » page 32 is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » !.

The following takes place after unlocking[1].
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The interior light, which is switched by the door contact, comes on.
› The safe securing system is switched off.
› The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

The following takes place after locking[1].
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The interior lights switched by the door contact come on.
› The safe securing system is switched on.
› The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

[1] Depending on the individual setting » page 32 .

Displaying an error
If the indicator light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- If the car is locked and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings.

i Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- If central locking fails the key only unlocks or locks the driver's door. The other doors and the tailgate can be emergency locked or emergency released.
  - Emergency locking of the door » page 233.
  - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 234.

Car key

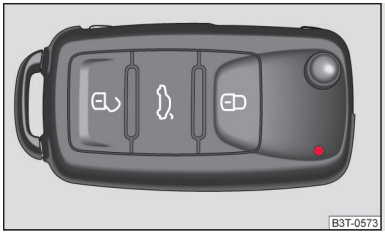


Fig. 13
Remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

Two remote control keys are provided with the vehicle » Fig. 13.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle. The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The remote control key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

The spare key must by initialised by a specialist garage after repair or replacement of the receiver unit. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle - even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise, the children might start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 232.

Note

If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to provide you with a new one.

Locking / unlocking with remote control

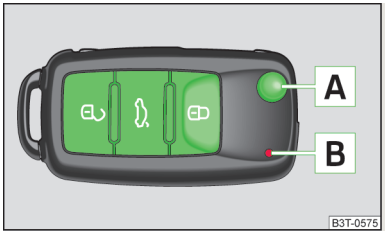


Fig. 14
Remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

Explanation of graphic

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking the boot lid
- A Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- B Warning light

Unlocking
The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The seat and mirror are adjusted after the vehicle is unlocked » page 68.

Locking
The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

The current position of the seat and mirror after the vehicle is locked » page 68.

Checking the battery condition
The battery is empty if the red warning icon B » Fig. 14 does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key. Replace the battery » page 232.

WARNING

If the car is locked from the outside and the safelock system is switched on, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

CAUTION

- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).

Note

For vehicles with anti-theft alarm the acoustic signals can also be activated/deactivated by locking/unlocking » page 27.

Unlocking/locking – KESSY

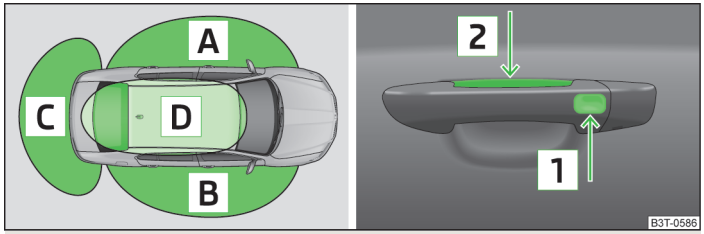


Fig. 15 **KESSY: Name of the zones/sensors in the handle of the front door**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key. The key must be located at a maximum distance of about 1.5 m from the unlocking or locking area » Fig. 15.

Unlocking
› Grab the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor 2 » Fig. 15 with the whole palm of your hand » !.

Locking
› Touch the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid
› Press the handle of the boot lid » page 36.

Switching off the safelock system
› Use your fingers to touch the sensor 1 twice within 2 seconds.

Unlocking or locking areas
A Front door left
B Front door right
C Luggage compartment lid

If you cover the sensor 2 at the same time as the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 when unlocking the vehicle, it is not unlocked.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor 1, it will not be possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via the sensor 2 - prevents accidental unlocking.

The KESSY system can find the valid key, even if it was left in the front of the vehicle's roof for example D » Fig. 15. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

Always check to see whether the vehicle is locked.

Further information about the KESSY system » page 34.

CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.
- After leaving the vehicle, it does not lock automatically, the procedure for locking the vehicle must therefore be observed.
- If the battery in the key is weak or discharged, the vehicle may not be unlocked or locked via the KESSY system. In this case, use the emergency unlocking or emergency locking on the driver's door » page 233.

Safe securing system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. Afterwards, it is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

Note SAFE locking! Owner's manual!
CHECK SAFELOCK

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching off
The safelock can be switched off by locking twice within 2 seconds.

Switching on
The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-on display
The indicator light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switch-off display
The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Individual settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

The following central locking functions can be set via the central information display » page 27, *Settings* .

Opening a single door
This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking doors on one side of a vehicle
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking the vehicle with the KESSY system
This function enables you to unlock all the doors, individual doors, both doors on the left or right vehicle side. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking/unlocking
All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button .

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside

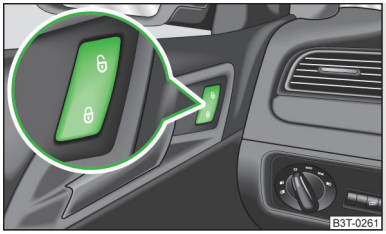


Fig. 16
Central locking button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, it can also be unlocked and locked with the rocker switch on the door opening lever of the driver or front passenger door » Fig. 16 even without the ignition switched on.

Locking

› Press the button /» Fig. 16.

The symbol in the button comes on.

Unlocking

› Press the button /» Fig. 16.

The symbol in the button is no longer illuminated.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

› It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Note

If the safelock system is switched on » page 32, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Child safety lock

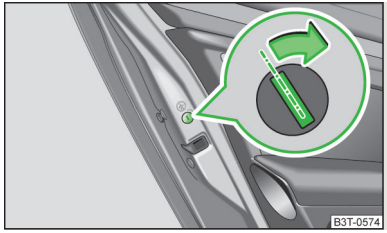


Fig. 17
Child safety locks on the rear doors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on

› Turn the slot of the safety lock in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 17 (mirror-inverted on the right doors).

Switching off

› Turn the slot of the safety lock in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 17 (mirror-inverted on the right door).

Opening/closing a door

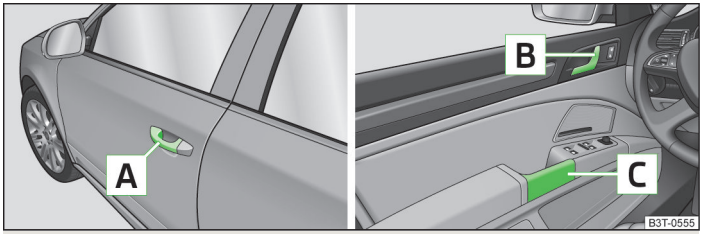


Fig. 18 **Door handle/door opening lever:**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

Opening from the outside

› Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A » Fig. 18 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

› Pull door opening lever B on the door you wish to open.

Closing from the inside

› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

! WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information message 34
Parking vehicle 35

Information message

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 34.

Key in the vehicle

The protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle unlocks the vehicle automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle, including the boot lit, has been locked.
✓ The key with which the vehicle has been locked remains in the vehicle in the zone D » Fig. 15 on page 31.

The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Key in vehicle.
KEY IN VEHICLE

Additionally, on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, an audible signal sounds.

The system has not found a key

If the system has not found a key in the vehicle, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Key not found.
NO KEY

This can occur if the key is outside the vehicle, the battery in the key is discharged, the key is defective or the electromagnetic field is strongly disturbed.

Fault in KESSY system

If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

Keyless access system faulty.

CHECK KEYLESS

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Low voltage of the key battery

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Change the key battery!

KEY BATTERY

Change the key battery » page 232!

Parking vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 34.

If the vehicle is not unlocked within 60 hours/ 90 hours, the sensors in the handle of the driver /front passenger's door are deactivated automatically » Fig. 15 on page 31.

Activation after 60 hours

› Unlock the driver's door using the sensor 2 » Fig. 15 on page 31.
› Press the handle of the boot lid.
› Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 233.

Activation after 90 hours

› Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button on the remote control key.
› Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 233.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating 36
Interior monitor and towing protection 36

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

An alarm is triggered when the following monitored areas of the vehicle have a fault.

› Bonnet.
› Boot lid.
› Doors.
› Ignition lock.
› Vehicle inclination » page 36.
› Interior of car » page 36.
› A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.
› Socket of the factory-fitted towing device » page 160, *Towing a trailer*.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

The alarm is **switched off** by unlocking the vehicle or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the doors and windows including the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

Activating
The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Note

If the car is unlocked with the key in the driver door, insert the key into the ignition and switch the ignition to deactivate the alarm system.

Interior monitor and towing protection

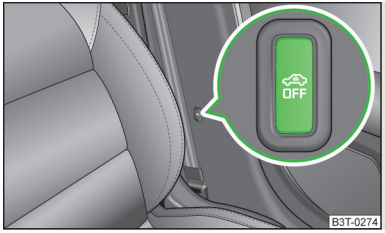


Fig. 19
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car or the inclination of the vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Switching off
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button OFF » Fig. 19 on the B-pillar on the driver's side. The lighting of the symbol OFF in the button changes from red to orange.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements from (e.g. children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

CAUTION

▪ The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
▪ The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Tailgate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

TwinDoor - open/close small lid 37
TwinDoor - open/close large lid 37
(Superb Combi) 38
Automatic locking 38

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even it was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, as otherwise this could crack – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is immediately locked automatically when closed.
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the tailgate, it could crack.

Note

The function of the handle above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

- Repeated opening and closing of the boot lid can lead to a temporary failure of the function due to the overheating protection of the motors of the Twindoor system.

TwinDoor - open/close small lid

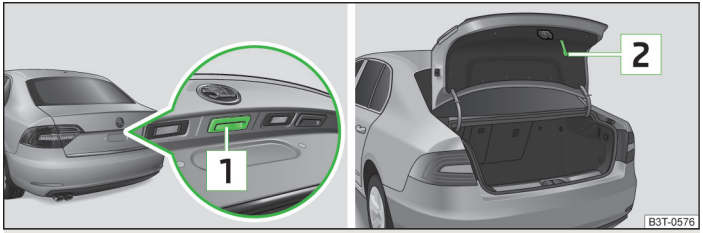


Fig. 20 **Handle of boot lid/opened small boot lid**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 36.

After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the handle above the number plate.

Opening

› Press the handle 1 » Fig. 20 at the lower edge of the tailgate and lift the lid.

Closing

› Pull down and strike the lid with the handle 2 » Fig. 20.

The small door can also be opened by the symbol is pressed on the remote control key » page 30 .

TwinDoor - open/close large lid

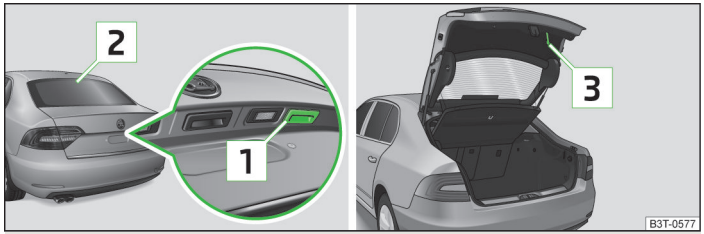


Fig. 21 **Handle of boot lid/opened large boot lid**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 36.

After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the handle above the number plate.

Opening

› Press the handle 1 » Fig. 21 on the bottom edge of the boot lid.
› Wait until the brake light 2 in the rear window flashes twice and then lift the lid.

Closing

› Pull down and strike the lid with the handle 3 » Fig. 21.

(Superb Combi)



Fig. 22 **Handle of boot lid**

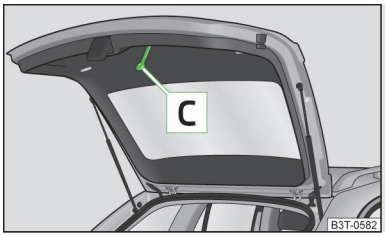


Fig. 23
Handle in the inner panelling of the boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 36.

After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the handle above the number plate.

Opening
› Press the handle A » Fig. 22 and raise the lid in the direction of the arrow B.

Closing
› Pull the lid down with the handle C » Fig. 23 and close with a slight swing.

Automatic locking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 36.

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is immediately locked automatically when closed.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Delayed locking
If the tailgate was locked using the symbol button on the remote control key, it is possible to open the tailgate within a limited period of time.

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. The vehicle should therefore always be locked with the symbol button on the radio remote control.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

Note

More detailed information about this is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Electric tailgate (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating description 39
Acoustic signals 40
Adjusting/deleting the top lid position 40
Malfunctions 41

Force limiter
The electric boot lid is fitted with a force limiter. If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Manual operation
Manually opening and closing the lid is only possible in exceptional cases, and must be completed slowly and without sudden movements as close to the centre of the lid as possible.

Handling the sides of the lid can damage the electric lid.

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even it was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

- The movement of the lid can be stopped by applying an abrupt and quick force against the lid.
- Do not try to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process. Damage can occur to the system of the electric boot lid.
- If the lid is closed manually, it must be ensured that when moving the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo.

CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- Ensure that there is at least 10 cm of clearance above the opened lid (e.g. distance from the garage ceiling). Otherwise, it may happen that the clearance above the opened lid is no longer sufficient after relieving the vehicle of a load (e.g. after unloading) – risk of causing damage to the lid.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the load on the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.

Note

Switch off the engine in the event of a malfunction and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operating description

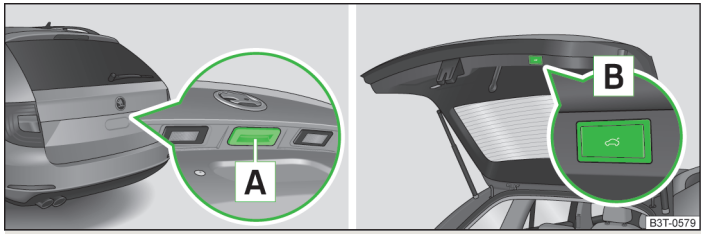


Fig. 24 **Operation of the lid**

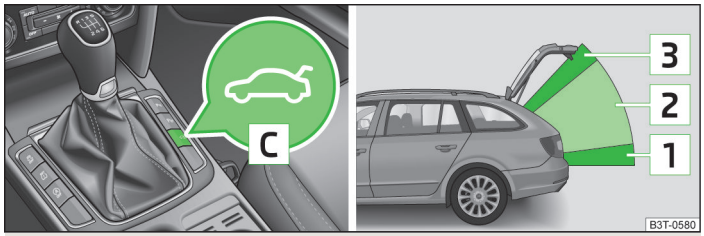


Fig. 25 **Lid operation/operating areas**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Control elements

The lid can be operated with the following control elements.
› With the symbol button on the remote control key (press for about 1 s).
› With the handle A on the outer part of the lid » Fig. 24.
› With the button B on the inner part of the lid » Fig. 24.
› With the button C in the centre console » Fig. 25.

Operating areas
The system distinguishes 3 operating areas where the function of the individual operating elements changes » Fig. 25. The end positions of the lid - fully closed in the secured lock and fully opened - differ as well.

The range of the area 3 changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid » page 40.

If the lid is set in the uppermost position in the area 2, the area 3 is not active. The range of the area 2 changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid.

Symbol explanation in the operating description

☑ Feasible action

☐ Non-feasible action

⬑ Movement in the opposite direction to the previous movement

Lid operation with the handle A

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☑	☑	⬑	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	⬑	☑	☑

The operation of the lid using the handle A is only possible when the vehicle is unlocked.

Lid operation with the button B

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☐	☑	⬑	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	⬑	☑	☑

Operating the lid with the button B is only possible when the lid is open.

Lid operation with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button C

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☑	☑	☑	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

When the ignition is switched on, the operation of the lid does not function using the remote control key.

Operating the lid with the button C does not work if the vehicle was locked from the outside.

Operating the lid with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button C does not work when a trailer is coupled to the vehicle.

Acoustic signals

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

The acoustic signals serve as a safety function and provide information about the success of a performed action.

Signals	Status
Interrupted tone	Opening (with the button on the remote control key or with the button C » Fig. 25 on page 39) Automatic closing of the lid » page 39, ! in section *Introduction*
1 continuous tone	Force limiter
3 rising tones	Confirmation of the storage of the lid position
3 identical tones	fault

Adjusting/deleting the top lid position

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Adjusting

› Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).

› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 24 on page 39 for longer than 3 seconds.

Storing the new position is confirmed with an audible signal.

Delete

› Carefully lift up the lid manually to the maximum opening position.

› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 24 on page 39 for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal sounds and the height which was originally set is deleted from the memory, while the basic position of the top lid position is again set.

The top lid position is adjusted, for example, in the following situations.
› When the space for opening the lid is limited (e.g. garage height).
› For a more convenient operation, such as by a person's height.

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

The lid always opens to the height which was last stored.

Malfunctions

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected while the lid is open, it is necessary to activate the system of the electric boot lid. Activation means closing the lid by hand. Thus, the end position of the lid is stored under fully closed in secured lock.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be lifted out of the lock.	Emergency unlocking of the lid » page 234
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Remove any obstacle (e.g. snow), open the lid again » page 39 Press the handle A and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid

Electric power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat 42
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors 42
Force limit 43
Window convenience operation 43
Operational faults 43

The power windows operate only when ignition is switched on.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. The power windows are only switched off completely once the driver or front passenger door are opened.

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

WARNING

- Ensure that no persons are still left in the vehicle when locking the vehicle. In an emergency, the windows will no longer be able to be opened from the inside.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 43. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton) S » Fig. 26 on page 42 when children are being transported on the rear seats.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 192, *De-icing windows and exterior mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 43.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

The window lift system is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat

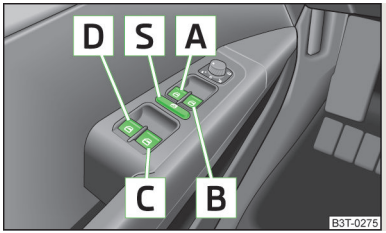


Fig. 26
Buttons on the driver's door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Opening

› The window is opened by pressing gently on the corresponding button. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

The window will also open fully automatically if you briefly press the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› The window is closed by pulling gently on the corresponding upper edge of the button. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

The window will also close fully automatically if you briefly pull the button as far as the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Buttons for the power windows » Fig. 26.

A Button for power window of the driver's door
B Button for power window of the front passenger door
C Button for power window of the rear right door
D Button for power window at the rear left door
S Safety pushbutton

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety pushbutton S » Fig. 26. The buttons for the electrical power windows in the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton S again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the indicator light in the safety switch S lights up.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

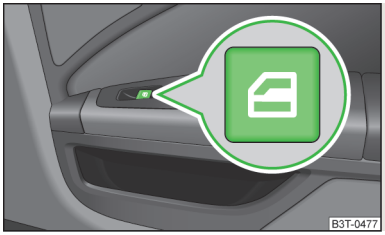


Fig. 27
Arrangement of the button on the rear door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Force limit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Convenience opening/closing of all windows can be operated by locking/unlocking the vehicle as follows.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Opening and closing can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
› Press and hold the upper part of the central locking button in the driver's door » page 33.
› Hold the button A[1] in the opening position » Fig. 26 on page 42.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› Press and hold the lower part of the central locking button » page 33 in the driver's door.
› Hold the button A[1] in the closing position » Fig. 26 on page 42.
› In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 31.

You can interrupt the opening or closing process for the windows immediately by releasing the key or the the button A and interrupting the locking/unlocking.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's lock is only possible within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

Operational faults

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

The automatic power windows do not work if the vehicle battery was disconnected and connected while a window is open. The system must be activated.

[1] Convenience opening and closing the windows with the button A is possible immediately after unlocking the vehicle or turning off the ignition and opening the driver's or front passenger's door.

Activation sequence:

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 3 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Electric sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation ____ 44
Convenience operation of sliding/tilting roof ____ 45
Electric sliding/tilting roof with solar cells ____ 45

The electric sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. In this case, turn the rotary switch to the switch position A» Fig. 28 on page 44 and push forward for about 10 seconds.

Operation

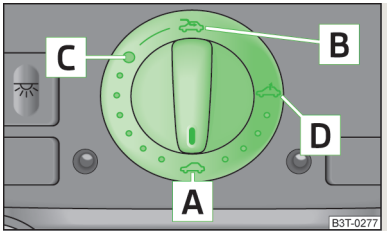


Fig. 28
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 44.

Comfort position

› Turn the switch to position C » Fig. 28.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open fully

› Turn the switch to position B and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

› Turn the switch to position D.

Closing

› Turn the switch to position A.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. If an obstacle (e.g. ice) prevents closing, the sliding/tilting roof stops and opens completely. The sliding/tilting roof can be closed completely without the force limiter by turning the switch into position A » Fig. 28 at the front for as long as it takes for the sliding/tilting roof to close completely » !.

WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Convenience operation of sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 44.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking/unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 31.

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 31.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor 1 when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not work when convenience closing is in operation.

Note

In case of failure of the sliding/tilting roof contact a specialist garage.

Electric sliding/tilting roof with solar cells

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 44.

If there is sufficient bright sunlight, the solar cells on the sliding/tilting roof deliver power for the fresh air blower. Further information » page 100, *Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)*.

The operation of the sliding/tilting roof with solar cells is the same as of a normal sliding/tilting roof.

Panoramic sunroof (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 46
Opening/closing the sun screen 46
Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof 47

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position A » Fig. 29 on page 46, pull the recess firmly downwards and forwards. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun screen does not operate correctly. Then turn the switch to position A » Fig. 29 on page 46and press and hold the button G » Fig. 30 on page 46. The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

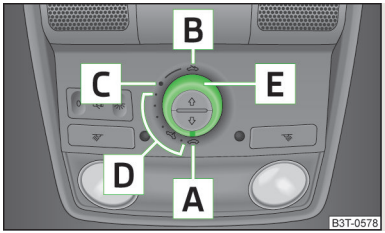


Fig. 29
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 45.

Comfort position
› Turn the switch to position C » Fig. 29.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially
› Turn the switch to a position in area D.

Open fully
› Turn the switch to position B and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof
› Turn the switch to position A.
› Press the switch in the region E towards the roof.

Closing
› Turn the switch to position A.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

Force limiter
The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess E down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » !.

! WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Opening/closing the sun screen

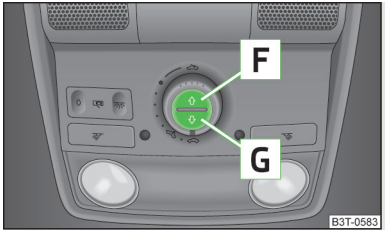


Fig. 30
Buttons for sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 45.

The sun screen can be closed or opened using the buttons » Fig. 30.

Opening
› Briefly press the button F » Fig. 30 to open fully.
› Press and hold the button F to open to the desired position.

The opening process stops when one releases the button.

Closing
› Briefly press the button G » Fig. 30 to close fully.
› Press and hold the button G to close in the desired position.

The closing process stops when one releases the button.

Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 45.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking/unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 31.

Closing

› Hold down the symbol button on the key, or when using the KESSY system, keep your finger on the sensor 1 » Fig. 15 on page 31» !.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor 1 when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not work when convenience closing is in operation.

Note

In case of failure of the sliding/tilting roof contact a specialist garage.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Parking and low beam lights 48
Dayl. dri. lights (DAY LIGHT) 49
Turn signal and main beam 50
Automatic driving lamp control 50
Adaptive headlights (AFS) 51
Fog lights 52
Fog lights with the CORNER function 52
Rear fog light 52
COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME 52
Hazard warning light system 53
Parking lights 54

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of certain switches differs from that shown in » Fig. 31 on page 48. The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical.

The low beam continues to shine while the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in the position or **AUTO**. After switching off the ignition, the low beam is switched off automatically and only the side lights come on. The side light goes out after the ignition key is removed.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » page 192, *Headlight lenses*.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.
- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the given light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!

Note

- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.
- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Parking and low beam lights

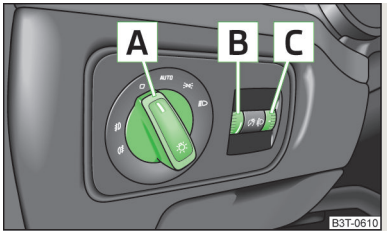


Fig. 31
Light switches, knobs for headlight beam adjustment and instrument illumination

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

The light switch also controls the fog lights » page 52, the rear fog light » page 52 and the parking light » page 54.

The light switch A or the control dials B and/or C is used to operate the following functions » Fig. 31.

- Switching on the parking light or parking lights on both sides.
- Switching on the low beam.
- 0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights).
- Headlight beam adjustment.
- Adjust brightness of the instrument lighting.

Lights and visibility
Turning the rotary switch B from position - to 3 gradually activates the headlight beam adjustment, thereby shortening the beam of light » Fig. 31.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

- - Front seats occupied, boot empty.
- 1 All seats occupied, boot empty.
- 2 All seats occupied, boot loaded.
- 3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded.

Instrument lighting
The instruments are also illuminated when the side light, low or high beam light is switched on.

Turning the rotary switch C when the lights are switched on adjusts the brightness of the instrument lighting » Fig. 31 .

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.
- The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

Dayl. dri. lights (DAY LIGHT)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

The daytime running lights function provides the lighting of the front of the vehicle.

Deactivating the function daylight driving lights
› Pull the turn signal and main beam lever to the steering wheel and push downwards » Fig. 32 on page 50.
› At the same time switch on the ignition and hold the lever down in this position for at least 3 seconds.

Activating the function daylight driving lights
› Pull the turn signal and main beam lever to the steering wheel and push upwards » Fig. 32 on page 50.
› At the same time switch on the ignition and hold the lever down in this position for at least 3 seconds.

The daylight driving lights can also be activated or deactivated via the information display in the menu item **Dayl. dri. light**» page 27.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 31 on page 48.

Note

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front or rear) and the number plate lights are not lit.

Turn signal and main beam

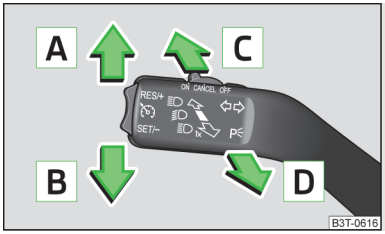


Fig. 32
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

The parking light » page 54 and headlight flasher are also operated with the operating lever.

The following functions can be operated with the operating lever » Fig. 32.

A Right turn signal on.
B Left turn signal on.
C High beam on (spring-tensioned position).
D Main beam off or headlight flasher ON (spring-tensioned position).

If you only wish to flash three times (convenience turn signal), briefly push the lever to the pressure point A or B and release again.

The "Lane ch. flash" can be activated/deactivated via the information display in the menu item **Lane ch. flash**» page 27.

The main beam can be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The headlight flasher can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

! WARNING

Only use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note

- The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.
- The indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

Automatic driving lamp control

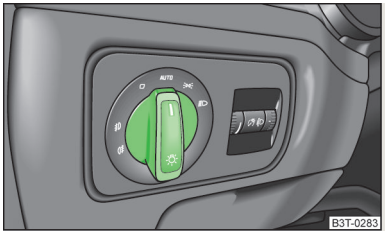


Fig. 33
Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 33, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on/off automatically.

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the light sensor attached between the windscreen and the interior mirror.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the symbol **AUTO** lights up next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic headlight control in rain
If the light switch is in position **AUTO** and if automatic wiping in rain or wiping (position 2 or 3) is switched on for longer than 15 seconds » page 60, the parking lights and low beam will switch on automatically.

The light switches off when automatic wiping/wiping (position 2 or 3) is not switched on for longer than approx. 4 seconds.

CAUTION

Do not affix any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled.

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

The AFS system works in tandem with automatic driving lamp control **AUTO**, please read the following » page 50.

The AFS system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle to the driving speed or the use of the wiper.

The AFS system can work only if the following condition is met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam. The mode is active if none of the following modes are active.

City mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to illuminate the surrounding pavements, junctions, pedestrian crossings, etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km / h.

Motorway mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is activated gradually from a speed of 90 km/h. It is most effective at speeds above 120 km/h.

Rain mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Dynamic cornering lights
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km.h and in all AFS modes.

Tourist light (travel mode)
This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

When this mode is active, the above-mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

This mode can be activated/deactivated via the information display in the menu item **Travel Mode** » page 27.

WARNING

If the AFS system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Note

When the "Tourist light" mode is active, the warning icon flashes for about 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.

Fog lights

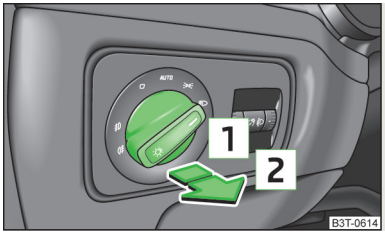


Fig. 34
Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position ≡D or ≡D« » Fig. 34.
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The indicator light ≡D lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 13.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

The CORNER function lights the front fog lamp on each side of the vehicle to illuminate the area around the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left[1].
✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
✓ The engine is running.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position AUTO and the low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position ≡D or ≡D« » Fig. 34 on page 52.
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light ≡D lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 13.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME (hereafter referred to only as function) makes it possible to automatically switch on the lights for a short time after leaving the vehicle or when approaching the vehicle in poor visibility.

The function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 33 on page 50.
✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
✓ The ignition is switched off.

The functions and settings of the illumination time can be activated/deactivated via the information display in the menu items **Coming Home** or **Leaving Home** » page 27.

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the light sensor attached between the windscreen and the interior mirror » page 50.

The function switches on the parking and low beam lights, the entry lighting in the exterior mirrors and the licence plate light.

COMING HOME
The light turns on automatically when you open the driver's door on (within 60 seconds of turning off the ignition).

The light turns off 10 seconds after closing all the doors and the tailgate or after the preset time.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light goes out after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME
The light turns on automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light turns off after 10 seconds or after a preset time or after the vehicle is locked.

CAUTION

Do not affix any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled.

Note

If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Hazard warning light system

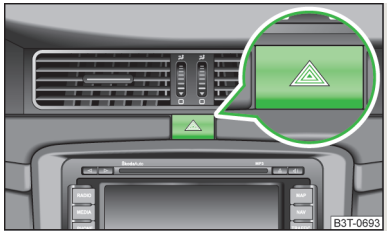


Fig. 35
Button for hazard warning light system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

Switching on/off
› Press the ⚠ » Fig. 35 button.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

When the turn signal is switched on while the hazard warning light system is on (ignition on), only the turn signal light for the selected driving direction will flash while the turn signal is switched on.

CAUTION

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.
- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

Parking light switching on
› Switch off the ignition.
› Place the lever into the position A or where applicable B as far as it can go » Fig. 32 on page 50 - the parking light on the right/left side of the vehicle is switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides
› Turn the light switch A to position » Fig. 31 on page 48 and lock the vehicle.

Note

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light 54
Rear interior light 55
Rear interior light 55
Front door warning light 56
Entry lighting 56

Front interior light

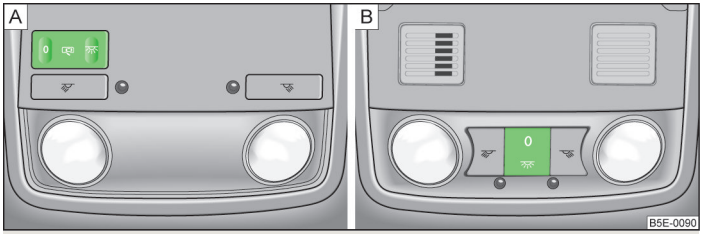


Fig. 36 **Interior lights at the front**

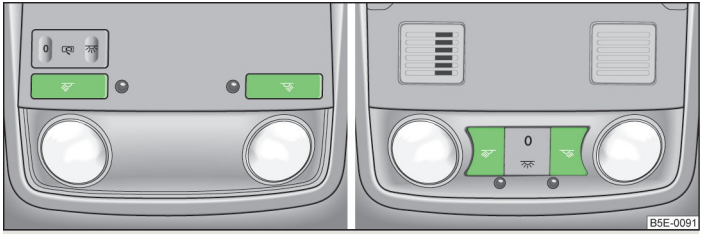


Fig. 37 **Reading lights**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Switching on the light
› Press the button in the area of the symbol » Fig. 36.

Switching off the light
› Press the button in the area of the symbol **O** » Fig. 36.

Operating with the door contact switch
› Place the button in the middle position.

On vehicles without an interior monitor, the middle position is marked with the symbol » Fig. 36 - A .

Switching the reading light on/off

› Press the button or » Fig. 37.

If operating the light with the door contact switch is enabled, the light will come on when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is unlocked.
› One of the doors or the tailgate is opened.
› The ignition key is removed.

If operating the light with the door contact switch is enabled, the light will go off when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked.
› The ignition is switched on.
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Note

▪ If the interior light remains switched on when the ignition is switched off or if one of the doors is open, the light will automatically go out after around 10 minutes.
▪ Two diffuse lights are integrated in the front interior lighting, that illuminate the gearshift lever and the middle of the dash panel. These are switched on automatically when the parking light is activated. Also, after switching on the ignition when the parking lights are switched on, the door handle lighting comes on.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles without a panoramic sliding roof.

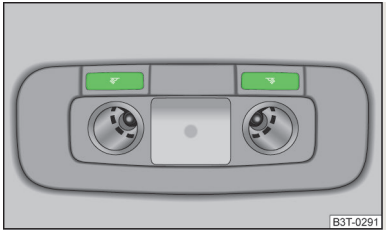


Fig. 38
Interior light and rear reading lights

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The rear interior light is operated together with the front interior light » page 54.

Switching the reading light on/off

› Press the button or » Fig. 38.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles with a panoramic sliding roof.

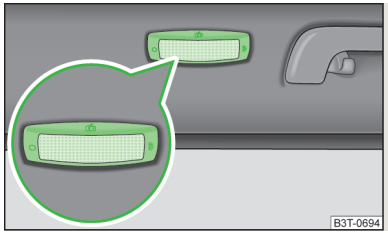


Fig. 39
Interior lights at the rear

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Switching on

› Press the cover glass on the symbol » Fig. 39.

Switching off

› Press the cover glass on the symbol **O**.

Operating with the door contact switch

› Place the cover glass in the middle position .

In this position, the same rules apply to this light as for the front interior light » page 54.

Front door warning light

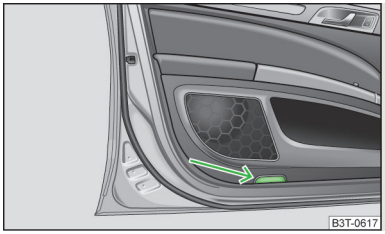


Fig. 40
Warning light

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The warning light is located in the lower door trim panel » Fig. 40.

The light switches on/off when the front door is opened or closed.

Vehicles without this warning light have only a reflector at this point.

Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 20 minutes.

Entry lighting

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The light comes on after the vehicle has been unlocked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed or if the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 1 minutes.

Boot light (Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Removable lamp 57
Remove the lamp 57
Changing rechargeable light batteries 57

CAUTION

The removable lamp is not watertight and must therefore be protected against moisture.

Note

- If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, it does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.
- If the lamp is not switched off and it is correctly inserted in the holder, the bulbs in the front part C » Fig. 41 on page 57 of the lamp are automatically switched off.

Removable lamp

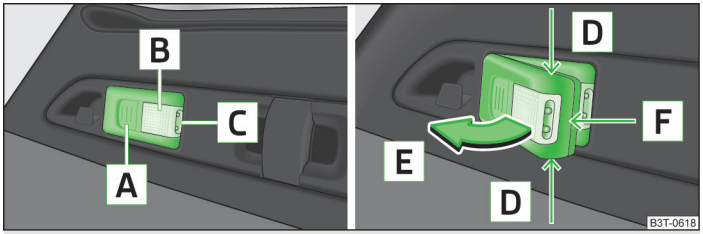


Fig. 41 **Removeable lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

A removable lamp is fitted on the left side of the boot. This lamp has two functions:
› lighting the boot - it illuminates part B » Fig. 41 (the lamp is in the holder),
› portable lamp - it illuminates part C (the lamp has been removed from the holder).

If the lamp is in the holder, it is automatically switched on when the tailgate is opened and switched off again when the tailgate is closed.

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type AAA batteries. The rechargeable batteries are constantly charged when the engine is running. It takes approx. 3 hours to fully charge the rechargeable batteries.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. Therefore it is possible to attach the lamp, for example on the vehicle body, after removing it.

Remove the lamp

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Taking out the lamp
› Grasp the lamp in the areas of the arrows D » Fig. 41 on page 57 and swivel it in the direction of the arrow E.

Reinserting the lamp the holder
› First of all place the deactivated lamp in the holder on the side facing the boot lid and then press on the lamp from the other side until it is clicks into place.

Operation of the lamp
› If you press the button A once, the lamp lights up with 100 % light intensity.
› If you press the button A again, the lamp lights up with 50 % light intensity.
› If you press the button A once again, the lamp goes out.

Changing rechargeable light batteries

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Proceed as follows if you wish to replace the faulty rechargeable batteries yourself:

› Remove the lamp.
› Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the location of the lock-off clips F » Fig. 41 on page 57.
› Remove the faulty rechargeable batteries from the lamp.
› Insert the new rechargeable batteries.
› Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner. If the lamp is not correctly opened, it can be damaged.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of used rechargeable batteries in accordance with national legal provisions.

Note

▪ Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.
▪ The replacement rechargeable batteries must have the same specification as the original rechargeable batteries. If other types of rechargeable batteries are used, the power output can be reduced or it can lead to a malfunction of the lamp.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater 58
Sun visors 58
Sun screen 59
Sun screen in the rear doors 59

Windscreen and rear window heater

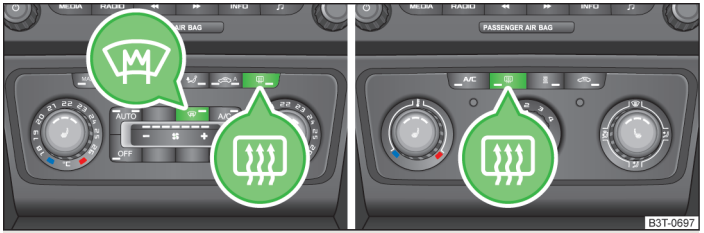


Fig. 42 **Buttons for the rear and front window heating Climatronic / manual air conditioning**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

Explanation of graphic

Switching the rear window heater on/off.

Switching the windscreen heater on/off.

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The front - and rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The windscreen and rear window heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » page 143, *Saving electrical energy*.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the windscreen and rear window heater switches off automatically, to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 213, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button the heater is off due to low battery.

Sun visors

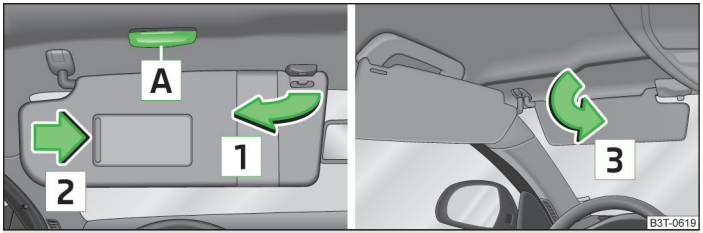


Fig. 43 **Sun visor/double sun visor**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 43.

The vanity mirrors in the sun visors are provided with covers. Push the cover in the direction of the arrow 2. When you slide open the cover, the vanity mirror lighting in the headliner A switches on automatically. It switches off again when you slide the cover closed or when you raise the sun visor.

On vehicles that are equipped with a double sun visor, the auxiliary visor can be unfolded in the direction of the arrow 3 after swivelling the sun visor towards the door.

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. These objects might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

Sun screen

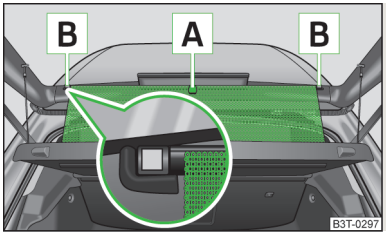


Fig. 44
Unroll the sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

The sun screen is located in the lower part of the boot cover.

Pulling out

› Pull the sun screen on the handle A » Fig. 44 and hang it in the magnetic brackets B.

Folding

› Remove the sun screen from the magnetic brackets B and hold it on the handle A so that it can slowly roll up into the housing on the boot cover without being damaged.

Note

Do not place any objects that react sensitively to influences of magnetic fields (watches, electronics, etc.) in the immediate vicinity of the magnetic brackets. They can be damaged by the magnetic field.

Sun screen in the rear doors

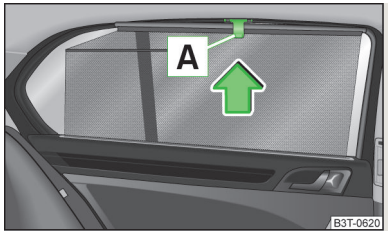


Fig. 45
Rear door: Sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

Pulling out

› Pull out the sun screen with the handle A » Fig. 45 and hang it in the bracket on the top edge of the door.

Folding

› Remove the sun screen from the handle A » Fig. 45 and hold it in such a way that it can roll up slowly without being damaged.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers 60
Alternative parking position of the rear windscreen wiper (Superb Combi) 61
Headlight cleaning system 61

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

When automatic wiping in rain is active, the wiper intervals are regulated based on the intensity of the rain.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 204.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 236.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping in rain only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- The ignition must not be switched on if the front windscreen wiper arms are folded out. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.
- Keep the wiper blades clean. They may become soiled, e.g., with wax residues after washing in automatic car wash systems » page 189.

Windscreen wipers and washers

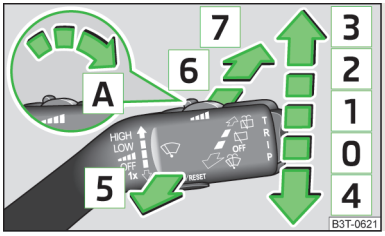


Fig. 46
Operating lever: Operation of the windscreen wipers and washer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

Function of the windscreen wipers and washers in the individual positions » Fig. 46

- 0 Wipers off
- 1 Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
- 2 slow windscreen wiping
- 3 rapid windscreen wiping
- 4 Flick windscreen wiping (spring-tensioned position)
- 5 Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
- 6 Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes every 6 seconds)
- 7 Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
- A Switches for setting the required break between the individual wiper strokes (1 periodic windscreen wiping) or the wiper speed in rain (1 automatic windscreen wiping in rain)

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 3 - 4 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (Superb Combi)
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). The lever remains in position 6 » Fig. 46.

Automatic rear window wiper (Superb Combi)
If the windscreen wiper is in position 2 » Fig. 46 or 3 the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the lever is in the position 1) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated/deactivated via the information display in the menu item **Rear wiper** » page 27.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper
If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

› Switch on the windscreen wipers.
› Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 236.

Note

If the slow or the fast wiper setting is switched on and the vehicle speed decreases to below 4 km/h, the wiper speed is incrementally set to a lower wiper speed. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.

Alternative parking position of the rear windscreen wiper (Superb Combi)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

Each time after switching off the engine for the second time, the wiper blade of the rear window wiper is tilted. This prolongs the life of the wiper blade.

Activation/deactivation
› Switch on the ignition.
› Push the operating lever to position 6 » Fig. 46 on page 60 five times in succession within 5 seconds.
› Switch off the ignition. After switching on the ignition again, the alternative park position of the rear window wiper is activated/deactivated.

Headlight cleaning system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

After the ignition is turned on headlamps are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spraying of the windscreen 5 » Fig. 46 on page 60 when the low beam or high beam is switched on.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror 63
Additional interior mirror 63
External mirrors 64

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.
- The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

WARNING

Automatic dimming mirrors contain an electrolytic fluid which may leak should the mirror glass break.
- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, open all windows and doors.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

CAUTION

Never mechanically fold in or fold back the exterior mirrors with the fold-in function by hand as this will damage the electric drive.

Note

- Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the sun screen for the rear window in the housing on the boot cover is not in use or the light striking the interior rear-view mirror is not affected by other objects.
- If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the the electrical exterior mirror setting fails at any time, the two mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact a specialist garage if there is a fault with the power setting function for the exterior mirrors.

Interior mirror

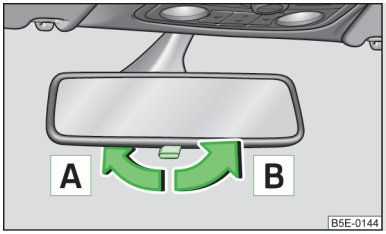


Fig. 47
Manual dimming interior mirror

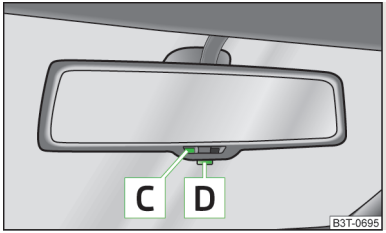


Fig. 48
Automatic dimming mirror

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 62.

Manual dimming interior mirror

› Adjust the lever at the lower edge of the mirror towards the windscreen (the mirror dims) A » Fig. 47.
› Adjust the lever at the lower edge of the mirror away from the windscreen (home position) B.

Automatic dimming mirror

› Press the button D, the warning light C lights up (the mirror is activated) » Fig. 48.

To deactivate, press the button D again, the warning light C goes out.

If automatic dimming is activated, the mirror dims **automatically** depending on the light striking the mirror from the rear.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 62, ! in section *Introduction*.

Additional interior mirror

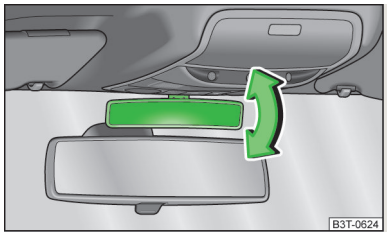


Fig. 49
Additional interior mirror

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 62.

The additional interior mirror allows the driver a wider field of view of the rear seats.

Adjusting the angle

› Take hold of both the upper and lower edge of the mirror such that you are not touching the surface of the mirror.
› Adjust the mirror in direction of arrow to the desired position.

! WARNING

Concentrate at all times fully on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Use the additional interior mirror only to such an extent that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.

External mirrors

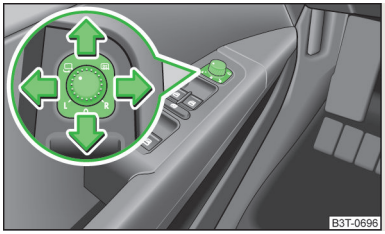


Fig. 50
Rotary knob

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 62.

Mirror heater
› Set the rotary knob to position » Fig. 50.

The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 ℃.

Adjusting both mirrors in sync
› Set the rotary dial to position **L** or, on right-hand drive vehicles, into position **R**.» Fig. 50 The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

The synchronous adjustment of the two mirrors can be activated/deactivated via the information display in the menu item **Mirror adjust** » page 27.

Adjusting the front passenger's mirror
› Set the rotary dial to position **R** or, on right-hand drive vehicles, into position **L**.» Fig. 50 The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Switching off operating control
› Set the rotary knob to position **0** » Fig. 50.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob
› Set the rotary knob to position » Fig. 50.

It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 15 km/h.

The mirrors are folded back into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position to a different one.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key
› If all the windows are closed, press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key for approx. 2 seconds.

The exterior mirror is folded back into the driving position when the ignition is switched on.

Automatic dimming mirror
The exterior mirrors are dimmed together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 63.

Tilting surface of front passenger mirror
On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver's seat » page 68, the surface of the mirror tilts down slightly when the reverse gear is engaged and the rotary knob is in the position **R** or in position **L**on vehicles with right-hand drive » Fig. 50. This provides an aid in seeing the kerb of the pavement when parking the car.

The mirror returns into its initial position, after the rotary knob is moved out of the position **R** or position **L** on vehicles with right-hand drive, and put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

The tilt of the mirror surface can be activated/deactivated via the information display in the menu item **Mirror down** » page 27.

Memory function for mirrors
On vehicles fitted with a memory function for the driver seat, the relevant setting for the exterior mirrors is also stored automatically when the seat position is stored » page 68.

Seats and useful equipment

Adjusting the seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually adjusting the front seats 66
Electric front seat adjustment 66
Headrests 67
Memory function of electrically adjustable seat 68
Memory function of the remote control key 68

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important:
› for safely and quickly reaching the controls;
› for a relaxed body position that reduces fatigue;
› **for achieving maximum protection from the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is still functional if the ignition is switched off (even with the ignition key removed). Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 184, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.

WARNING (Continued)

- The front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!

WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions:
- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking » page 136. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seated position in the seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each new driver seat and external mirror position that is saved will overwrite the existing setting.

Manually adjusting the front seats

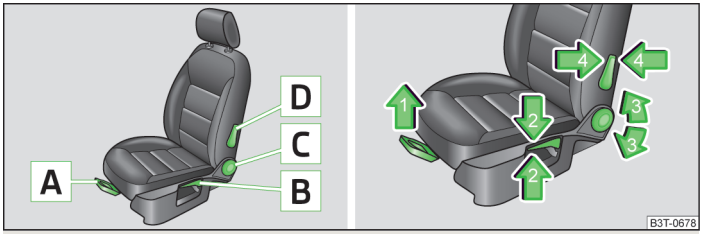


Fig. 51 **Controls / setting**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 65.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull the lever A » Fig. 51 in the direction of the arrow **1** and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

› Again push/pull the lever B » Fig. 51 in the direction of one of the arrows**2**.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel C » Fig. 51in the direction of the arrow **3**.

Adjusting lumbar support

› Push the lever D » Fig. 51 in the direction of one of the arrows**4**.

Electric front seat adjustment

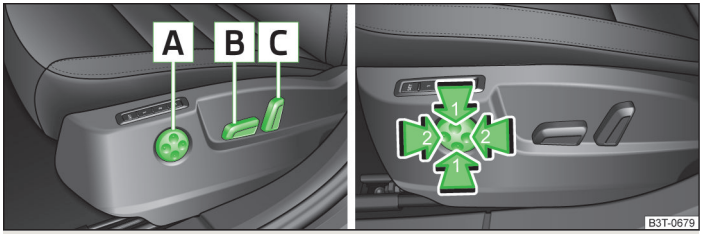


Fig. 52 **Adjusting controls / lumbar support**



Fig. 53 **Setting: Seat pad / backrest**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 65.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Push the switch B » Fig. 52 in the direction of one of the arrows **3** » Fig. 53.

Set the height of the seat cushion

› Push the switch B » Fig. 52 in the direction of one of the arrows **5** » Fig. 53.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

› Push the switch B » Fig. 52 in the direction of one of the arrows **4** » Fig. 53.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Push the switch C » Fig. 52 in the direction of one of the arrows **6** » Fig. 53.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support
› Push the switch A in the region of one of the arrows**2**» Fig. 52.

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support
› Push the switch A in the region of one of the arrows**1**» Fig. 52.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 68 or the remote control key » page 68.

Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again.

Headrests

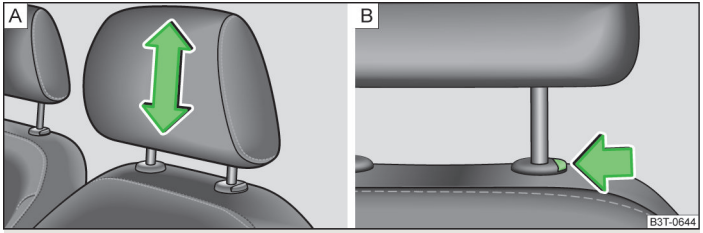


Fig. 54 **Headrests: adjust / remove**

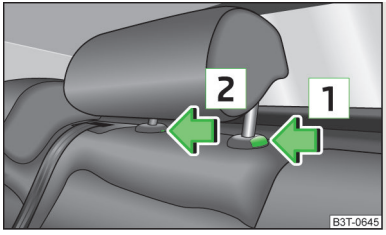


Fig. 55
Rear centre head rests in vehicles with the TOP TETHER system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 65.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Setting height
› Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required » Fig. 54 - A.
› To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button » Fig. 54 - B with one hand and press the head restraint downwards with the other hand.

The front seats and head rests must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers » page 168, *Correct seated position*.

Removing/installing
› Pull the head restraint up out of the seat backrest as far as the stop (for the rear head restraints fold the seat backrest forward).
› Press the locking button in direction of the arrow » Fig. 54 - B and pull the head restraint out.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Removing and installing rear middle head rest
Applies to vehicles using the TOP TETHER system.

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 55, simultaneously press the locking button into the opening 2 using a flat screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head rest.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

WARNING

- The head rests must be correctly adjusted to avoid risk of injury.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head rests must not be in the lower position.

Note

The middle rear head restraint is adjustable in two positions.

Memory function of electrically adjustable seat

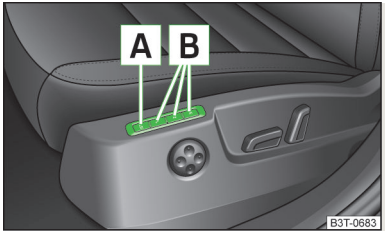


Fig. 56
Memory buttons and SET button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 65.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons B » Fig. 56 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat to the desired position.
› Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 64.
› Press the button SET A » Fig. 56.
› Within 10 seconds after pressing the SET button, press the desired memory button B.

An acknowledgment sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the required memory button B » Fig. 56.
› Move the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control into position R » page 64.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 64.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

› **Press** the desired memory button B » Fig. 56 briefly with the ignition on.

or

› **Press and hold** the desired memory button B with the ignition off or when the ignition is on and travelling at a speed of more than 5 km / h.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note

Each time new seat and exterior mirror settings for forward travel are saved, the individual setting for the right exterior mirror for reverse travel must also be saved again.

Memory function of the remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 65.

The function of automatically storing the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors when the vehicle is locked can be activated in the memory of the remote control key.

When this function is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key.

Activating the function

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 56 on page 68. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

The seat and external mirror positions which are already saved in the memory button are **not** saved in the memory of the key.

The seat can be adjusted to the required position if necessary » page 66.

After locking the vehicle, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key.

Deactivating the function

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold the SET button A » Fig. 56 on page 68. At the same time, press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat heaters 69
Ventilated front seats 70
Convenience features of passenger seat 71
Front armrest 71
Rear armrest 71
Seat backrests 72
Rear seat folded forward (Superb Combi) 72

Seat heaters

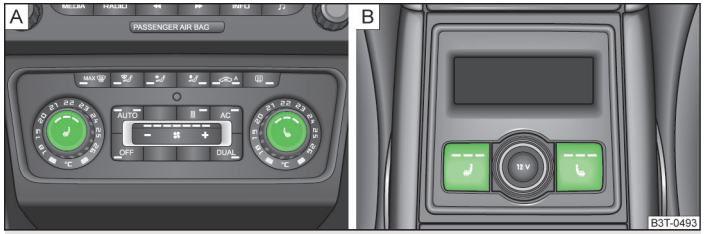


Fig. 57 **Heating: Front seats/ rear seats**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 69.

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Switching on the front seat heater

› Press the area of the controller in the area of the symbol or » Fig. 57 - A.

Switch on rear seat heater

› Press the symbol button or » Fig. 57 - B.

By pressing the button once, the heating is switched to the highest intensity - level 3, which is indicated by all three of the indicator lights in the switch lighting up.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The intensity of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated indicator lights in the switch.

WARNING

If you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not use the seat heaters if the seats are not occupied by persons or if objects, such as a child seat, bag, etc., are fastened or stored on them. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 195, *Seat covers*.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 213.
- If the heaters for the rear seats are set to the highest intensity - level 3, they are automatically switched over to level 2 after 10 minutes (two indicator lights are illuminated on the switch).

Ventilated front seats

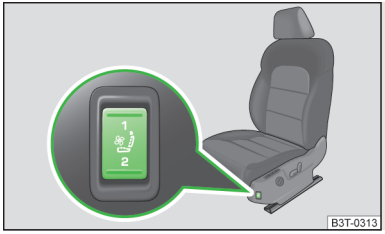


Fig. 58
Rocker switch for the seat ventilation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 69.

Heat and condensation can be removed from the seat cushions and seat backrests on the front seats.

The ventilation is operated using the rocker switch » Fig. 58 in the front part of the seat cushion, in front of the seat control elements for the electric front seat adjustment.

Switching on

› Switch the rocker switch to position **1** - lower intensity and to position **2** - higher intensity.

Switching off

› Switch the rocker switch to the centre position.

WARNING

If you or a passenger have limited pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. caused by medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend that you consult your physician before using the ventilated front seat.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The fan is located underneath the front seat cushion. Do not place any objects in this area - it may damage the fan.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 195, *Seat covers*.

Note

- The ventilation should only be switched on when the engine is running. This has a significant effect of saving on the battery capacity.
- We do not recommend using the front seat ventilation and heating at the same time. Using the ventilation to cool the seat surface considerably reduces the heating capacity, at the same time affecting the ability of the control unit to detect the right seat surface temperature.

Convenience features of passenger seat

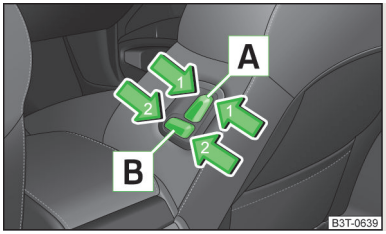


Fig. 59
Operating passenger seat from the rear seat

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 69.

The front passenger seat can also be operated from the rear seat.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
› Push the switch A in the direction of one of the arrows **1** » Fig. 59.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
› Push the switch B in the direction of one of the arrows **2** » Fig. 59.

Front armrest

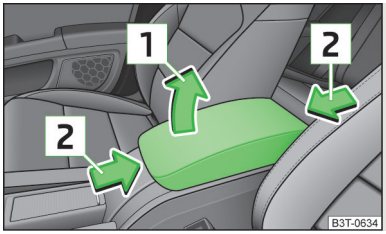


Fig. 60
Adjusting armrest

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 69.

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting height
› First of all fold the cover downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 60 to one of the 4 fixed positions.

Move
› Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 60.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 77.

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the hand-brake.

Rear armrest



Fig. 61
Fold the armrest forwards

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 69.

Folding forward
› Fold down the armrest in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 61 .

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 75.

Seat backrests

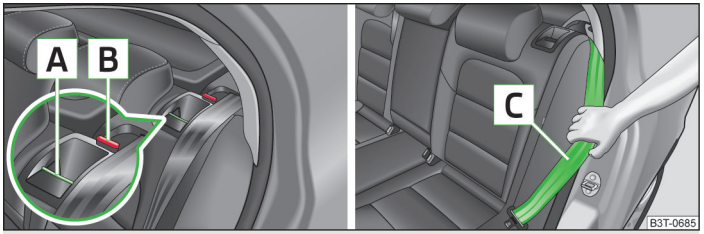


Fig. 62 **Seat backrest: locking / unlocking**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 69.

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Folding forward

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests [1].

› Push the lever A » Fig. 62 and fold the seat backrest completely forwards.

Folding backward

› If you removed the head restraint, you need to reinsert it with the backrest tilted slightly forwards » page 67.
› Hold the rear outer seat belt C » Fig. 62 against the side trim panel.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob A clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

WARNING

- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

CAUTION

Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

Rear seat folded forward (Superb Combi)

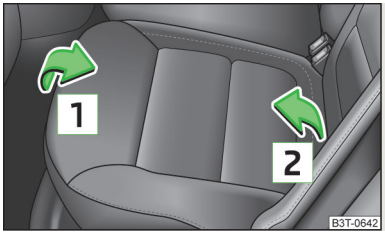


Fig. 63
Folding the seat cushion forwards

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 69.

› Pull up the seat cushion in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 63 and fold forwards in the direction of the arrow 2.

[1] If the front seats are too far back, we recommend removing the rear head restraints before the seat backrests are folded forward, to achieve a loading space that is as horizontal as possible. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

Note

To achieve a loading space that is as horizontal as possible, the rear head restraints can be removed before folding the seat backrests forwards. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

Practical features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder 73
Storage compartment on the driver's side 74
Storage compartments in the doors 74
Storage compartment in the front centre console 74
75
Cigarette lighter 76
Ashtray 76
12-volt power outlet 77
Storage compartment under the armrest 77
Storage net in the front centre console 78
Glasses storage box 78
Storage compartment on the passenger side 79
Storage compartment under the passenger seat 79
Clothes hook 80
Storage pockets on the front seats 80
Storage compartment for umbrella 80
Storage compartment in rear centre console 81
Storage compartment in rear armrest 81
Rear seat backrest with through-loading channel 81
Removable through-loading bag 82

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – there is the risk of an accident.
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes or operate the clutch or accelerator pedal – risk of accident!

Car park ticket holder

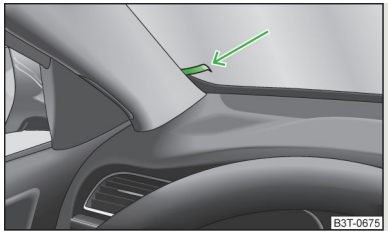


Fig. 64
Windscreen: Parking ticket holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

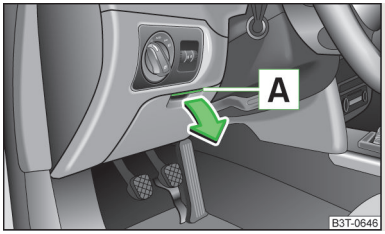


Fig. 65
Storage compartment on the driver's side

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Opening
› Raise the handle A » Fig. 65 and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing
› Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Storage compartments in the doors

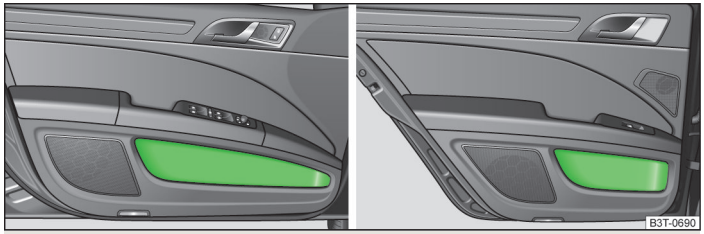


Fig. 66 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

! WARNING

Use the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

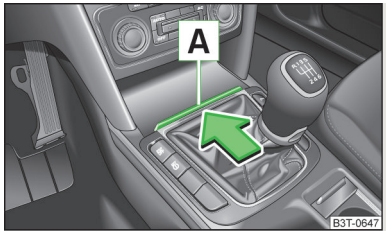


Fig. 67
Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Open/close
› Press on the edge of the roof A » Fig. 67 in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

WARNING

The storage compartment must never be used as an ashtray or for the storage of combustible materials - fire hazard and risk of damage to the storage compartment!

Note

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which lights up when the parking light is on.

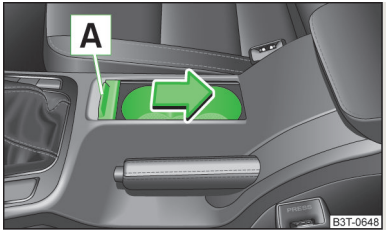


Fig. 68
Front centre console: Cup holder

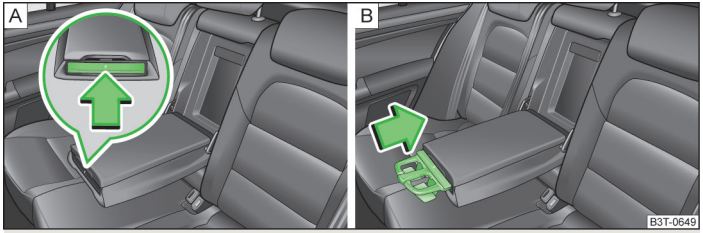


Fig. 69 **Rear armrest: Remove cup holder/insert cup holder**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Cup holder at the front

On vehicles that are fitted with a cover for cup holders, you can cover the cup holder by pulling on the handle A » Fig. 68 in the direction of the arrow.

Rear cup holder

› Press on the front end of the armrest in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 69 - A, the cup holder comes out.
› To slide the cup holder in again, press the middle part of the cup holder » Fig. 69 - B and slide it into the armrest in the direction of the arrow.

WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- Slide in the cup holder before raising the rear armrest.

Cigarette lighter

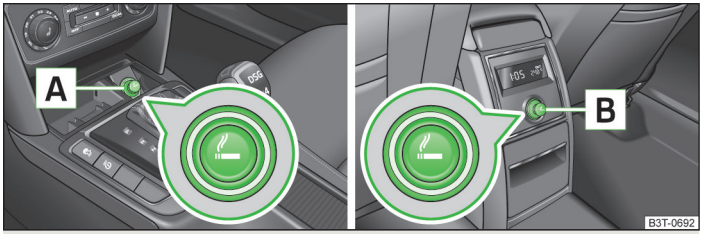


Fig. 70 **Centre console: Cigarette lighter, front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Usage

› Press the button of the cigarette lighter A or B » Fig. 70.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can case burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Note

- The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12Volt socket for electrical appliances » page 77, *12-volt power outlet*.
- Further information » page 196, *Modifications, repairs and technical alterations*.

Ashtray



Fig. 71 **Centre console: Ashtray at the front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

› Open the ashtray » Fig. 67 on page 74.
› Grasp the ashtray insert in the area A » Fig. 71 and remove it in the direction of the arrow 1.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

› Open the ashtray » Fig. 80 on page 81.
› Grasp the ashtray insert B » Fig. 71 in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

Note

The ashtrays are fitted with an interior light which lights up when the parking light is on.

12-volt power outlet

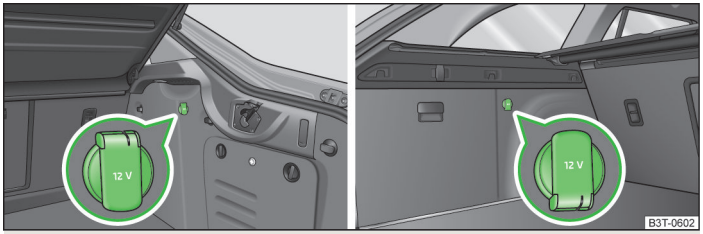


Fig. 72 **Boot: Superb / Superb Combi socket**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket
In the front centre console A » Fig. 70 on page 76.

In the rear centre console B » Fig. 70 on page 76.

In the boot » Fig. 72.

Using the power socket
› Remove the cover from power socket or cigarette lighter » Fig. 70 on page 76or open the cover for the power socket» Fig. 72.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 12-volt power sockets and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » !.

WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Storage compartment under the armrest

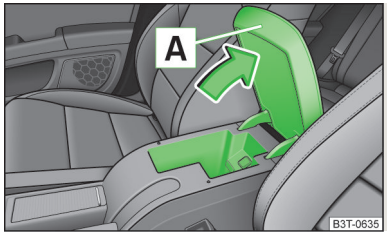


Fig. 73
Armrest: Stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Opening
› Pull and open the cover of the armrest using the handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 73.

Closing
› Open the lid to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 73.

This storage compartment is located with the lettering **AUX** marked AUX-IN input and the MDI input.

Note

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which lights up when the parking light is on.

Storage net in the front centre console

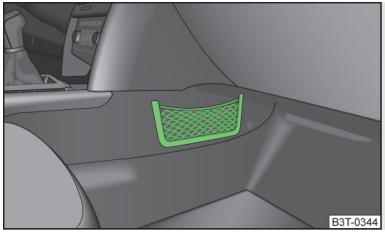


Fig. 74
Front centre console: Storage net

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 0.5 kg in the storage net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Glasses storage box

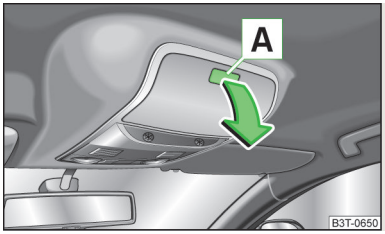


Fig. 75
Opening the glasses storage box

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Opening

› Press the button A » Fig. 75.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid on the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 75until it is heard to lock.

WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed!
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

CAUTION

Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - they may be damaged.

Storage compartment on the passenger side

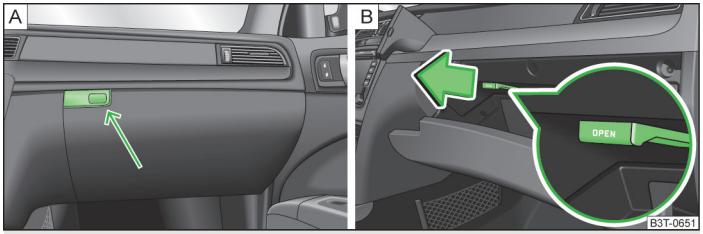


Fig. 76 **Tray open / operating air supply**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

A pen holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Opening

› Press the button » Fig. 76 - A.

The flap folds down.

Closing

› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Air supply

› Open the air supply by pulling the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 76 - B.

› The air supply is closed by pressing the lever in the opposite direction to that of the arrow.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

i Note

When the stowage compartment is opened, a light lights up.

Storage compartment under the passenger seat

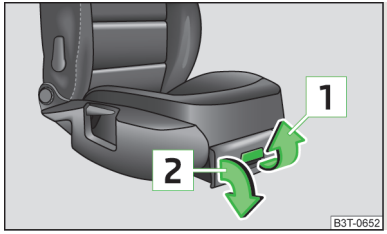


Fig. 77
Front passenger seat: Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Opening

› Pull the handle to position 1 » Fig. 77 in the direction of the arrow.

The compartment opens in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Grip the compartment by the handle and close in the opposite direction to that of the arrow 2 » Fig. 77.

› Hold onto the handle until the door is closed.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Clothes hook

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle pillar of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats

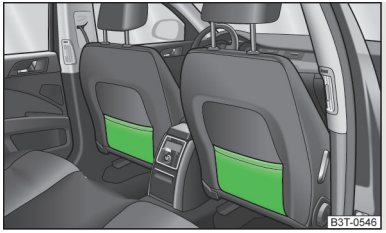


Fig. 78
Map pockets

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

The pockets intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc. are provided on the reverse side of the front seat rests » Fig. 78.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment for umbrella

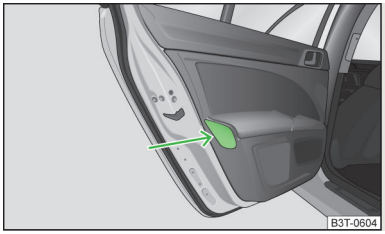


Fig. 79
Left rear door: Stowage compartment for an umbrella

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

The storage compartment for an umbrella is located in the rear left door » Fig. 79.

Note

An umbrella can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Storage compartment in rear centre console

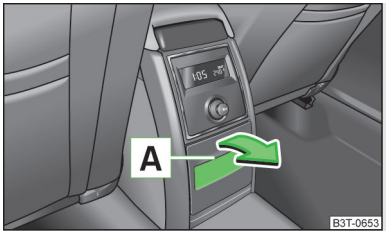


Fig. 80
Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

The storage compartment is equipped with a removable insert.

Open/close

› Pull the handle A » Fig. 80 on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

! WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

Storage compartment in rear armrest



Fig. 81
Opening the storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

Opening

› Lift button A on the front of the armrest and lift the storage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 81.

Closing

› Fold back the storage compartment lid in the opposite direction to that of the arrow » Fig. 81 until it clicks.

Rear seat backrest with through-loading channel

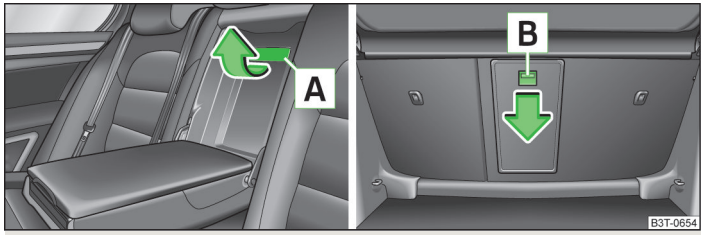


Fig. 82 **Rear seats: Cover handle/boot: Unlock button**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

After folding the rear armrest and cover up, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the removable through-loading bag with skis can be pushed. The armrest and cover can be folded forward from the passenger compartment or the boot.

Opening from the passenger compartment

› Fold down the rear armrest » Fig. 61 on page 71.
› Pull the handle A pull up to the stop in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover down » Fig. 82 .

Opening from the boot

› Push the unlock button B » Fig. 82 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing

› Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button B » Fig. 82 is not visible from the boot.

WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, removable through-loading bag » page 82.

Removable through-loading bag

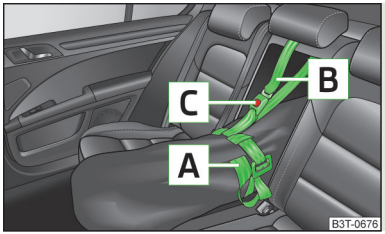


Fig. 83
Securing the through-loading bag

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 73.

The removable through-loading bag is solely used for transporting skis.

Loading

› Open the boot lid.
› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 81, *Rear seat backrest with through-loading channel*.
› Place the empty, removable through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Push the skis into the removable through-loading bag from the boot » !.
› Close the through-loading bag.

Securing

› Tighten the strap A on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 83.
› Fold the seat backrest a little forward.
› Guide the securing strap B through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Insert the securing strap B into the lock C until it clicks into place.

On vehicles fitted with a luggage net partition, guide the securing strap B around the housing when the net partition is rolled up. After fixing the net partition in place, it is not longer possible to unroll the net partition.

WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap B » Fig. 83.
- The strap A must hold the skis tight.
- Make sure that the strap A holds the skis in front of the binding (also refer to imprint on the removable through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

Note

- The through-loading bag is foreseen for four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the removable through-loading bag.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the removable through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.
- The removable through-loading bag must never be folded together or stowed when moist.

Boot

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Class N1 vehicles 84
Fasteners 84
Fixing nets 84
Folding hook 85
Floor covering 85

Luggage net 85
Boot cover 86
Roll-up boot cover (Superb Combi) 86
Automatic Retractable cargo cover (Superb Combi) 87
Side compartments in the boot 87
Side compartments in the boot with battery 88
Non-closable side pocket (Superb Combi) 88

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the nets » page 84.

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ". You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this "object" flies through the interior compartment and hits an occupant.

Luggage compartment light
The light switches on/off when the luggage compartment lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Boot light for Superb Combi vehicles » page 56.

WARNING

- Store the objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!

WARNING (Continued)

- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 169.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the following:
- heating elements in the rear window;
- elements of the aerial integrated in the rear window;
- Aerial filaments integrated in the rear side windows (Superb Combi).

Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 215.

Class N1 vehicles

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

Fasteners

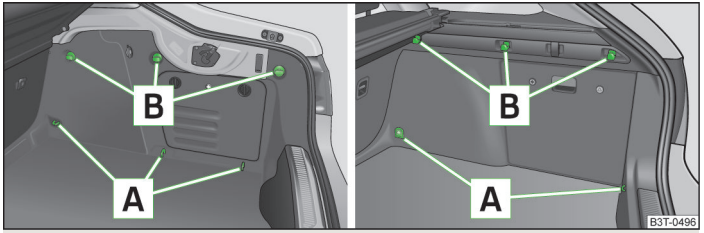


Fig. 84 **Lashing eyes and fastening elements: Superb / Superb Combi**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

The boot provides the following fastening elements » Fig. 84.

A Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
B Fastening elements for fastening fixing nets.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the lashing eyes is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Fixing nets

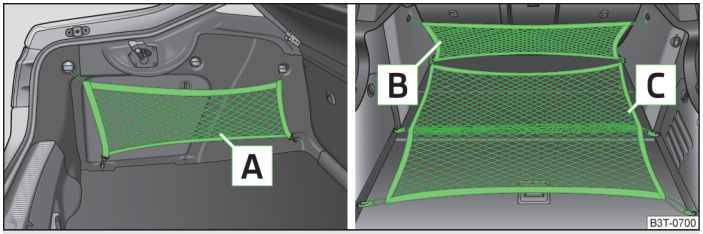


Fig. 85 **Fastening examples for nets**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

Examples for attaching the fixing nets» Fig. 85.

A Vertical pocket
B Horizontal pocket
C Floor net

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Folding hook

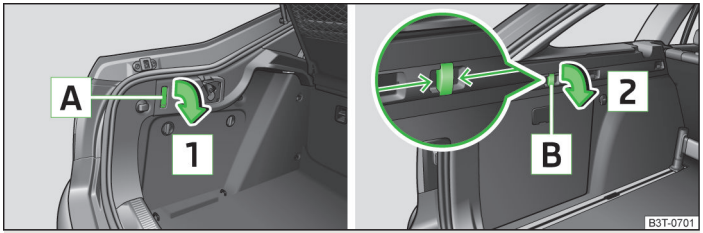


Fig. 86 **Folding hooks: Superb / Superb Combi**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

Folding hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the boot.

Folding forward

› Superb: Press on the lower portion of the hook A and fold down direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 86.
› Superb Combi: Grip the hook B direction of the arrow and fold down in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 86.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Floor covering

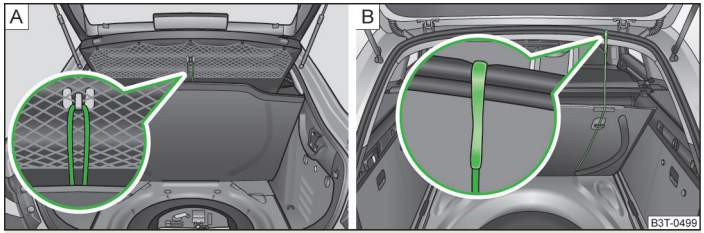


Fig. 87 **Fixing the floor covering: Superb / Superb Combi**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

The raised floor covering of the luggage compartment can be fixed (e.g. when handling the spare wheel):

› Superb: with the loop on a hook on the boot cover » Fig. 87 – A;
› Superb Combi: with the hook on the frame of the tailgate » Fig. 87 - B.

Luggage net

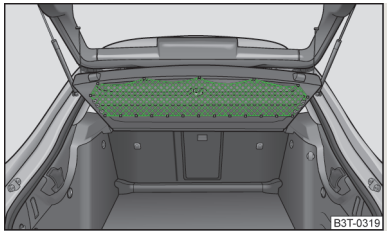


Fig. 88
Luggage net

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

The luggage net is located on the underside of the luggage compartment cover.

The net is designed for transporting lighter objects.

WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg in the net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Boot cover

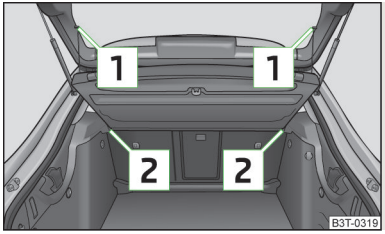


Fig. 89
Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

Removing

› Hook the support straps 1 » Fig. 89 onto the tailgate.
› Place the cover in the horizontal position.
› Pull the cover out of the holders 2 horizontally towards the rear.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest.

Install

› Push the boot cover into the brackets 2 » Fig. 89.
› Hook the support straps 1 onto the tailgate.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.

Note

If the retaining strips 1 are attached to the tailgate, the boot cover will raise when you open the tailgate.

Roll-up boot cover (Superb Combi)

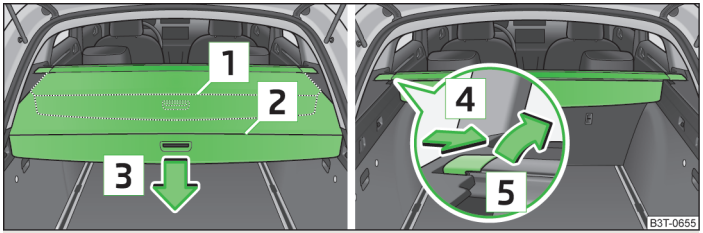


Fig. 90 **Roll-up boot cover: Pull out and roll up / remove**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

Pulling out

› Pull the foldable boot cover as far as the stop into the secured position 2 » Fig. 90.

Folding

› Press the cover in the handle area in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 90, and the cover automatically rolls up into position 1.

Press in the grip area again and the cover will roll up.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled-up boot cover can be removed (e.g. for the transport of bulky objects).

› Push on the side of the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 90 and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 5.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover.

Automatic Retractable cargo cover (Superb Combi)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

The automatic rolling up of the foldable boot cover enables an easier entry into the boot.

› Open the boot lid.

The foldable boot cover rolls up automatically in the position 1 to » Fig. 90 on page 86.

› Push the cover in the area of the handle in the direction of the arrow 3.

The cover retracts completely.

When the boot lid is opened quickly, the automatic rolling up of the foldable boot cover is blocked for a delay time of approx. 2 seconds.

The function to automatically roll up the foldable boot cover can be activated/deactivated via the information display in the menu:

- **Settings**
  - **Autom. blind**

Side compartments in the boot



Fig. 91 **Superb boot: Open side compartment left / right**

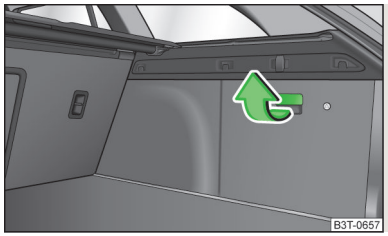


Fig. 92
Superb Combi boot: Open right compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

Open / close compartment (Superb)
› Turn the bolts in direction of arrow » Fig. 91 .

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

The CD changer and TV tuner are located in the right compartment » Fig. 91.

The first-aid box can also be stored in this compartment.

Open and close compartment / (Superb Combi)
› Pull the handle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 92.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

The CD changer and TV Tuner are housed in this compartment.

The first-aid box and warning triangle can also be stored in this compartment.

Side compartments in the boot with battery

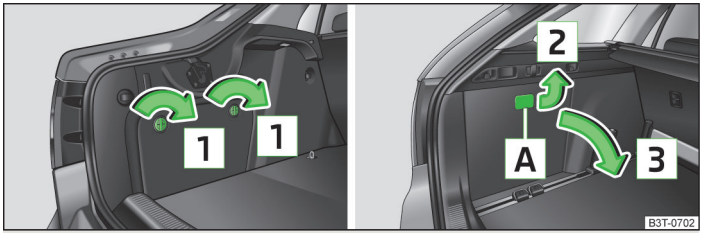


Fig. 93 **Open compartment with battery: Superb / Superb Combi**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

On some vehicles the battery is located in the left compartment » page 209.

Open / close compartment (Superb)

› Unfasten the bolts eg with a coin or screwdriver in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 93.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

Open and close compartment / (Superb Combi)

› For example, insert a coin in the slot A and lift them in the arrow direction 2 » Fig. 93 .

The compartment opens in the direction of the arrow 3.

› Close compartment (opposite to arrow direction) 3 until you hear it click.

Note

The side compartment where the battery is located is labelled in the Superb Combi vehicles with the symbol .

Non-closable side pocket (Superb Combi)

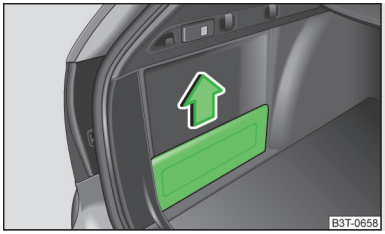


Fig. 94
Removing non-lockable side compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 82.

Increasing the size of the boot

› Remove the cover of the stowage compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 94.

CAUTION

When handling the side compartment, ensure that the cover and the cover mountings are not damaged.

Variable loading floor in the boot

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dividing the boot 89
Removing variable load floor 89

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Note

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to stow objects.

Dividing the boot

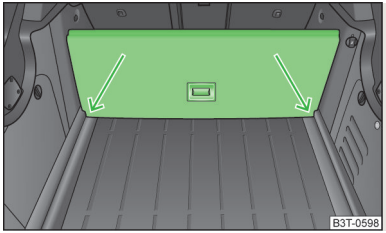


Fig. 95
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 88.

› Lift up the part with the mounting and secure it by sliding it into the grooves marked with the arrows » Fig. 95.

Removing variable load floor

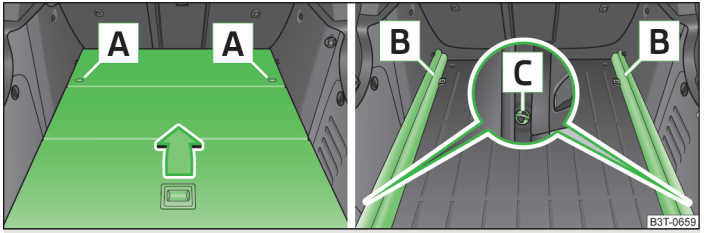


Fig. 96 **Boot: Remove variable loading floor/remove carrier rails**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 88.

› Unlock the variable loading floor by turning the safety eyes A » Fig. 96 to the left by around 90°.
› Fold up and remove the loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Unlock the carrier rails B by turning the arbour-mounted fixing eyes C to the right by approx. 90°.

WARNING

Ensure that the carrier rails and variable loading floor are correctly fastened when installing the variable loading floor. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Extending variable load floor with integrated aluminium strips and fasteners (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Partial extension of variable load floor 90
Dividing the boot 90
Removing and refitting the variable loading floor 91
Fixing set 91
Movable lashing eyes 92

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Note

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects, for example the fastening elements, removed foldable boot cover, etc.

Partial extension of variable load floor

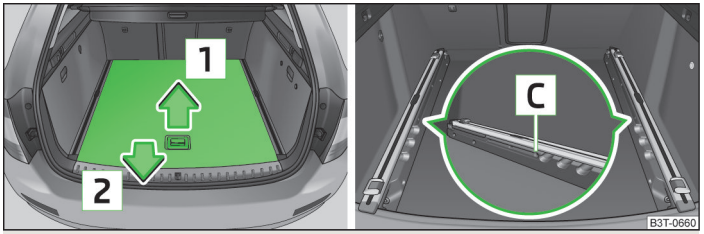


Fig. 97 **Boot: partially pulling out the variable loading floor**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 89.

The variable loading floor can be partially pulled out over the rear bumper.

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle and lift gently in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 97.
› Extend the variable load floor over the bumper in the direction of the arrow 2 until it engages in the opening C .

The variable loading floor which is pulled out in such a way is solely used as a seat, for example for changing shoes.

› To push in the rear section of the variable loading floor, grasp by the handle and lift slightly in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Slide the variable load floor forward up to the stop.

When pulling out the variable loading floor, the front edge (close to the rear seats) is lifted at the same time. Thus, small objects can no longer fall into the space between the boot floor and the variable loading floor.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the raised front edge of the variable loading floor is not damaged.

Dividing the boot

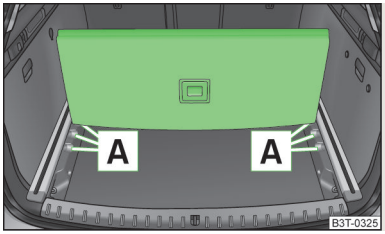


Fig. 98
Dividing the boot

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 89.

The boot can be divided with the variable loading floor.

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle and lift in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 97 on page 90 .
› Insert the trailing edge in one of the openings A » Fig. 98.

The variable loading floor is secured in the openings A against movement.

The variable loading floor can be pulled out a little more before dividing the boot with the variable loading floor » page 90. This enlarges the space between the rear seats and the separation.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the raised front edge of the variable loading floor is not damaged.

Removing and refitting the variable loading floor

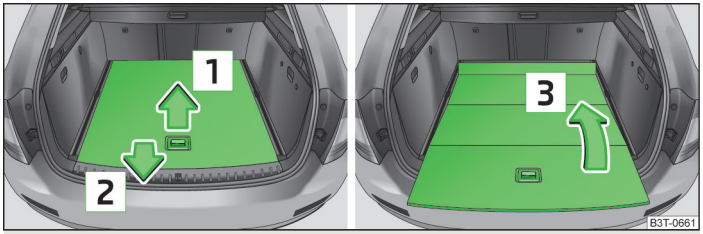


Fig. 99 **Boot: Fold up variable loading floor**

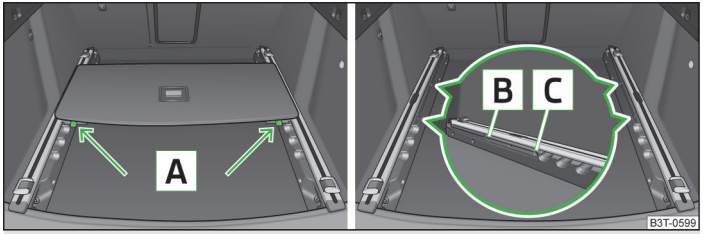


Fig. 100 **Boot: remove variable loading floor**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 89.

The variable loading floor can be removed and reinstalled, if necessary.

Removing

› Grasp the rear part of the floor by the handle, raise it slightly in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 99 and pull it out over the bumper in the direction of the arrow 2 until it engages in the opening C » Fig. 100.
› Fold up the loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 99.
› Press the safety buttons A » Fig. 100 and remove the floor.

Install

› Fold up the floor and place it on the carrier rails.
› Push the floor forwards until it engages in the openings B in the carrier rails » Fig. 100.
› Carefully press in the vicinity of the openings C on the floor until it clicks into place, if necessary press the safety buttons A.

WARNING

Ensure the variable loading floor is attached correctly during installation. If this is not the case, there is a risk of injury for the occupants.

Fixing set

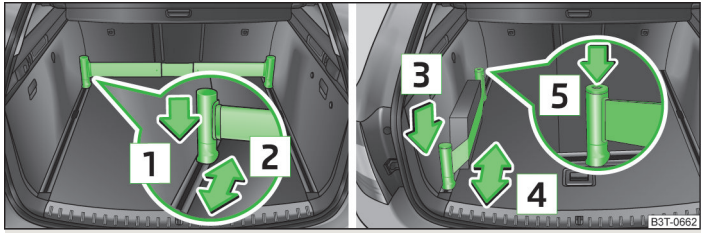


Fig. 101 **Telescopic pole and tensioning strap**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 89.

The fixing set can be used for dividing the boot or for securing the objects which are being transported.

Telescopic pole

› Insert the holders for the telescopic pole into the left and right openings of the carrier rails.
› Press the top part of the holder in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 101 and simultaneously push in the desired position in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Ensure that the holder is correctly locked in place.

Tensioning strap

› Insert the tensioning strap holders into the opening on the left or right carrier rail.
› Press the holder in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 101 and simultaneously push in the desired position in the direction of the arrow 4.

› Ensure that the holder is correctly locked in place.
› Place the object that is to be secured behind the tensioning strap.
› Press the button 5 on the top side of the holder and tighten the strap.

WARNING

The objects in the boot must be firmly secured with the fixing set so that they cannot move freely and uncontrollably and to prevent damage to objects or injuries to occupants.

Note

- Do not use the fixing set to secure objects that might damage the fixing set.
- The tensioning strap can also be fully reeled up by pressing the button 5 » Fig. 101.

Movable lashing eyes

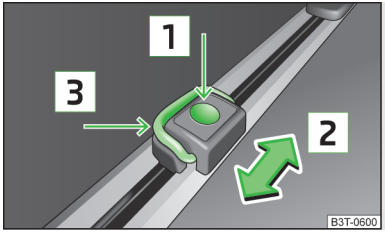


Fig. 102
Moveable lashing eyes

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 89.

There are four moveable lashing eyes in the boot that can, for example, be used to attach the fixing nets.

› Press the button 1 » Fig. 102 and push the lashing eye in the desired position in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Fold up the clamp 3 » Fig. 102 and, for example, attach the fixing net.

Net partition (Superb Combi)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the net partition behind the rear seats 92
Using the net partition behind the front seats 93
Removing and refitting the net partition housing 93

WARNING

- Ensure that the cross rod is inserted into the mounts C » Fig. 103 on page 92 or » Fig. 104 on page 93 in the front position!
- The belt locks and the belts must be in their original position after folding back the seat cushions and backrests - they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

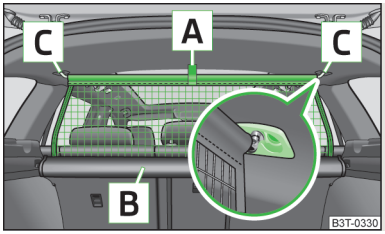


Fig. 103
Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 92.

Pulling out

› Pull the net partition by the tab A» Fig. 103 in the direction of the fasteners C.
› Insert the cross rod into one of the mounts C and push forwards.

› In the same way, insert the cross rod into the mount C on the other side of the vehicle.

Folding

› First pull the cross rod back slightly on the one side and then on the other side and remove it from the mounts C » Fig. 103.
› Hold the cross rod in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing B without being damaged.

Note

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, the roll-up luggage compartment cover can be removed » page 86.

Using the net partition behind the front seats

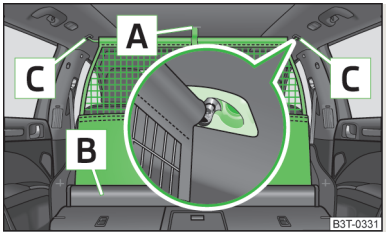


Fig. 104
Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 92.

Pulling out

› Fold the rear seats forward » page 72.
› Pull the net partition by the tab A » Fig. 104.
› First of all insert the cross rod into the mount C on one side and push it forward.
› In the same way, insert the cross rod into the mount C on the other side of the vehicle.

Folding

› First pull the cross rod back slightly on the one side and then on the other side and remove it from the mounts C » Fig. 104.
› **Hold** the cross rod in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing B without being damaged.
› Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 72.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

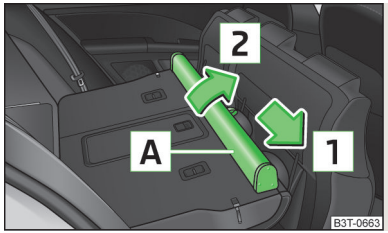


Fig. 105
Rear seats: Removing the net partition housing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 92.

Removing

› Fold the rear seats forward » page 72.
› Open the rear right door.
› Push the housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 105.

Install

› Insert the recesses on the housing A » Fig. 105into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
› Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 as far as the stop.
› Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 72.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points 94
Roof load 94

WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only use roof rack systems approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s
- If other roof rack systems are used or if the roof bars are not fitted correctly, any resulting damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. Therefore observe the supplied fitting instructions for the roof rack system are observed.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof or a panoramic sliding roof, ensure that the opened sliding/tilting roof or the panoramic sliding roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

Attachment points

Does not apply to the Superb Combi.



Fig. 106 **Attachment points for roof bars**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 93.

Installation location of the attachment points for roof bars » Fig. 106:

A Forward attachment point
B Rear attachment point

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 93.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **100 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

The air conditioning system

Heating, ventilation and cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlets 96
Using the air conditioning system economically 96
Operational problems 97

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » page 99 or for Climatronic » page 102.

WARNING

For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!

Note

- The used air streams out through the vents in the boot.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlets

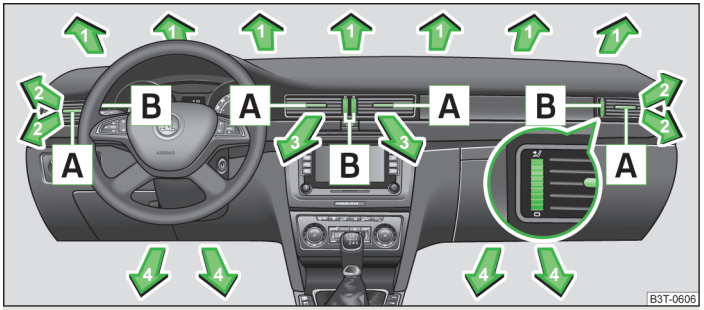


Fig. 107 **Air vents at the front**

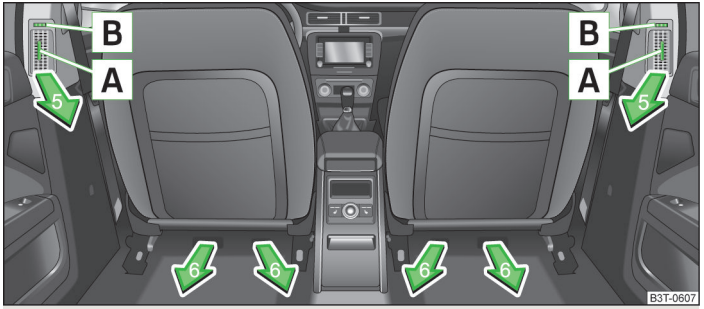


Fig. 108 **Air vents at the rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 95.

Unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of control dial and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **2**, **3** » Fig. 107 and **5** » Fig. 108 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Changing the air flow direction

› To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 107 or » Fig. 108 upward or downward.

› To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 107 or » Fig. 108 to the left or right.

Opening

› Turn wheel **B** » Fig. 107 or » Fig. 108 to position .

Closing

› Turn wheel **B** » Fig. 107 or » Fig. 108 to position **0**.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
/	1, 2
	1, 2, 4, 6
/	2, 3, 5
	4, 6

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with objects of any kind.

Using the air conditioning system economically

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 95.

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

When driving, the cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » page 140, *Economical driving and environmental sustainability*.

Operational problems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 95.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 237.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 9.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements 97
Setting 99
Recirculated air mode 99

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

✓ **A/C** » Fig. 109 on page 97 switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
✓ The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-4).

Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Note

We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Control elements



Fig. 109 **The air conditioning system: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 97.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 109**:**

A Set the temperature (turn to the left to reduce the temperature: turn to the right to increase temperature)
B Set the blower stage (stage 0: blower off; stage 4: the highest blower stage)

C Setting the direction of the air outlet » page 96
A/C Switch cooling system on/off
Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 58
Aux. heating on/off » page 103
Open/close the fresh air supply (recirculation) » page 99

Note

The warning light in the symbol button **A/C** lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system are met » page 97. By lighting up of the indicator light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

Setting

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 97.

Recommended basic settings of the control elements of the air conditioning system for the respective operating modes:

Settings	Setting of the control dial » Fig. 109 on page 97			Button » Fig. 109 on page 97		Air outlet vents 2 » Fig. 107 on page 96
	A	B	C	A/C		
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows[a)]	Desired temperature	3 or 4		Automatically switched on	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Switched off	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening
The fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Activated	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		Activated	Do not switch on	Open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening

[a)] We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 107 on page 96 in the opened position.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 97.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button .

The indicator light in the button lights up.

› Press the symbol button again.

The indicator light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 109 on page 97 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

! WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements 100
automatic mode 101
Switching the cooling system on/off 101
Setting the temperature 101
Recirculation 102
Controlling blower 102
Defrosting windscreen 103

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

✓ **A/C** » Fig. 110 on page 100 switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

Aeration of the vehicle when ignition is switched off
On models fitted with power sliding/tilting roof with sollar cells, the fresh air blower is automatically switched over to "solar mode" if the sun ray's are sufficient after switching off the ignition. The solar cells on the sliding/tilting roof deliver power for the fresh air blower. This supplies the interior of the car with fresh air.

For an optimum ventilation, the air outlet vents **2** and **3** must be opened » Fig. 107 on page 96.

The ventilation functions only when the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed.

Note

- We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.
- On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted radio or radio navigation system, the Climatronic information is also shown on their displays. This function can be switched off, see » *operating instructions for the radio or navigation system*.

Control elements

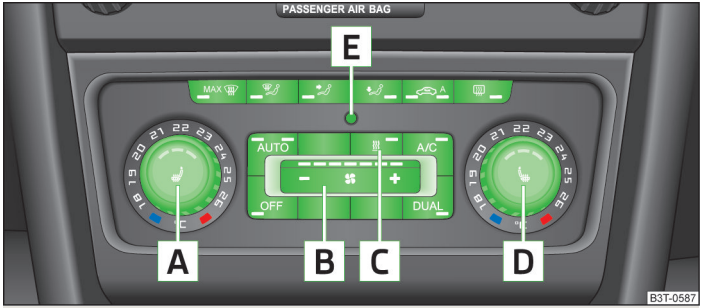


Fig. 110 **Climatronic: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 100.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 110**:**

A Adjust the temperature for the left side » page 101
B Adjust the blower speed » page 102
C Depending on equipment:
  › Aux. heating on/off » page 104
  › Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 58
D Adjust the temperature for the right side » page 101
E Interior temperature sensor
MAX Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off
Air flow to the windows
Air flow to the upper body

Air flow in the footwell
Recirculation mode with air quality sensor on/off » page 102
Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 58
Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 69
AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 101
OFF Switching Climatronic system off
A/C Switch cooling system on/off » page 101
DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off » page 101
Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 69

Note

Do not stick anything on or cover the interior temperature sensor E, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic.

automatic mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 100.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year

› Set the required temperature between +18 °C and +26 °C: we recommend 22 °C.
› Press the button **AUTO** » Fig. 110 on page 100.
› Move the air outlet vents **2** and **3** » Fig. 107 on page 96 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

After pressing, the indicator light in the top right or left corner of the button **AUTO** lights up, depending on which mode was last selected.

If the warning light in the top right corner of the button **AUTO** lights up, the Climatronic operates in "HIGH"-mode.

The "HIGH" mode is the standard setting of the Climatronic.

When pressing again the button **AUTO**, the Climatronic changes into the "LOW"-mode and the indicator light in the top left corner lights up. The Climatronic uses only in this mode the lower blower speed. However taking into account the noise level, this is more comfortable, yet be aware that the effectiveness of the air conditioning system is reduced particularly if the vehicle is fully occupied.

By pressing the button **AUTO** again, it is changed to "HIGH"-mode.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed.

Switching the cooling system on/off

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 100.

› Press the button **A/C**.

The indicator light in the button lights up.

› Once again press the button **A/C**.

The indicator light in the button goes out.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation and heating function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting the temperature

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 100.

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

For both sides

› Turn the control dial A » Fig. 110 on page 100 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The indicator light in the button **DUAL** lights up.

For the right side

› Turn the control dial D » Fig. 110 on page 100 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The indicator light in the button **DUAL** lights up.

If the warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** is lit, the temperature for both sides cannot be set with the control dial A. This function can be resumed by pressing the symbol button **DUAL**. The indicator light in the button goes out.

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +26 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +18 °C is selected, a blue symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale.

If a temperature higher than +26 °C is selected, a red symbol lights up at the start of the numerical scale.

At both end positions, Climatronic functions at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is not regulated.

CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Recirculation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 100.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched off.

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior. When the automatic air distribution control is switched on, an air quality sensor measures the concentration of pollutants in the drawn in air.

Switching recirculated air mode on

› Repeatedly press the button until the indicator light on the **left** side of the button is illuminated.

Switch on automatic air distribution control

› Repeatedly press the button until the warning light on the **right-hand** side of the button lights up.

Switch off automatic air distribution control temporarily

If the air quality sensor does not switch on automatic recirculated air mode when there is an unpleasant smell, you can switch it on manually.

› Press the symbol button .

The indicator light lights up in the button on the left side.

Switching recirculated air mode off

› Press the button **AUTO** or press the symbol button again until the warning lights in the button go out.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the symbol button **AUTO** when the windscreen is demisted.
- The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Controlling blower

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 100.

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature.

However, the blower stages can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

› Repeatedly pressing the symbol button on the left or right reduces or increases blower speed.

If the blower is switched off, the Climatronic system is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed above the symbol button when the respective number of indicator lights come on.

WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 100.

Switching on

› Press the symbol button MAX » Fig. 110 on page 100.
› Press the symbol button » Fig. 110 on page 100.

Switching off

› Press the symbol button MAX again or press the symbol button AUTO.
› Press the symbol button again.

More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** » Fig. 107 on page 96. The temperature control is controlled automatically.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching on/off ____ 104
Radio remote control ____ 105

Conditions for the functioning of auxiliary heating (Aux. heating and ventilation), hereinafter referred to only as auxiliary heating (Aux. heating).

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Auxiliary heating (aux. heating)

The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) can be used when stationary, when the engine is switched off to preheat the vehicle and while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) also warms up the engine. This is not valid for vehicles with the 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. The coolant heats air flowing into the passenger compartment (as long as the blower fan speed is not set to zero).

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, if you wish to operate the auxiliary heating (aux. heating), do not park the vehicle in such a way that the exhaust gases can come into contact with highly flammable materials (e.g. dry grass) or easily inflammable substances (e.g. spilt fuel) – risk of fire.

CAUTION

- Running auxiliary heating (aux. heating) consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) switches off.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating (aux. heating), which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.

Note

- The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) switches the blower on only if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) operates properly.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in an open position. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position or .

Switching on/off

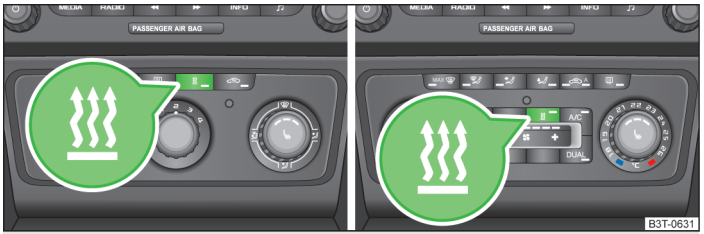


Fig. 111 **Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 103.

The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) can be switched on/off as follows.

Manually switching on

using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button lights up » Fig. 111;

ON by using the radio remote control » page 105.

Manually switching off

using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button goes out » Fig. 111;

OFF by using the radio remote control » page 105.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump runs for a short period.

Automatic switching on/off

The following menu items can be selected from the **Aux. heating** menu item in the information display » page 26 (depending on the vehicle equipment):

- **Day of the wk.** - Set the current day of the week;
- **Running time** - Set the required running time in 5 minute increments. The running time can be 10 to 60 minutes.
- **Mode** - Set the desired heating/ventilation mode;
- **Starting time 1**, **Starting time 2**, **Starting time 3** - for each pre-set time, the day and the time (hour and minute) can be set for switching on the auxiliary heating and ventilation. An empty position can be found between Sunday and Monday when selecting the day. If this empty position is selected, the activation is performed without taking into account the day.
- **Activate** - Activate pre-set mode;
- **Deactivate** - Deactivate pre-set mode;
- **Factory setting** - Restore factory setting;
- **Back** - Return to main menu

Only one programmed pre-set time can be active.

The last programmed pre-set time remains active.

After the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) automatically activates at the set time, it is necessary to pre-set a time again.

If the menu item **Back** is selected or no changes are made on the display for longer than 10 seconds, the set values are stored, but the pre-set time is not activated.

The system switches itself off at the end of the running time set under the menu item **Running time**.

Note

An indicator light on the button » Fig. 111 is illuminated when the system is running.

Radio remote control

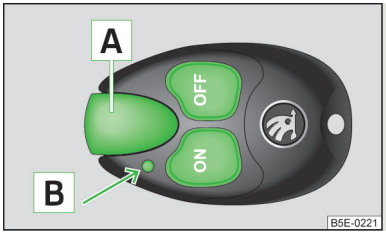


Fig. 112
Auxiliary heating (aux. heating): Radio remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 103.

Explanation of graphic

A Aerial
B Warning light
ON Switch on aux. heating
OFF Switch off aux. heating

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery in the remote control can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating (aux. heating) on or off, hold the remote control vertical, with the aerial A pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback:

Display warning light B » Fig. 112	Importance
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating was switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) is switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating (aux. heating) is blocked, e. g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating (aux. heating).
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 233.

CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.

Communication and multimedia

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems ____ 106
Universal telephone preinstallation (hands free) ____ 106
Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel ____ 107
Symbols in the information display ____ 108
Phone Phonebook ____ 109

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 106.

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please consult a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibility of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The reasons for this are as follows:
› no external aerial;
› external aerial incorrectly installed;
› transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in any area from where it becomes a projectile during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision — risk of injury.
- During air transport of the vehicle, the Bluetooth® function must be switched off by a specialist company.

Universal telephone preinstallation (hands free)

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 106.

The universal telephone preinstallation ("hands-free system") includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the adapter, radio or the navigation system.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Only use the hands-free system to the extent that you are in full control of your vehicle in any traffic situation.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.

Note

- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II or GSM III. Ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your phone is compatible with the universal telephone preparation GSM II or GSM III.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

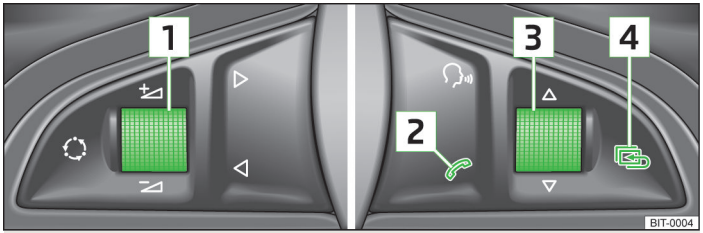


Fig. 113 **Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 106.

To minimize driver distraction when operating the telephone, the basic telephone's functions can be set by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel » Fig. 113.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone preinstallation at the factory.

The buttons operate the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button/wheel	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	Mute (MUTE 🔇)
1	Turn upwards	Increase the volume
1	Turn downwards	Decrease the volume

Button/wheel	Action	Operation
2	Press briefly	Accept call, End call Display telephone's basic menu → Telephone main menu → List of dialled numbers → Call selected contact
2	Press and hold button	Reject the incoming call
3	Turn up/down	Previous / next menu item
3	Press briefly	Confirm selected menu item
3	Press and hold button	Continuously display first letter of the phone book
3	Quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
3	Quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book
4	Press briefly	Return to a previous level on menu
4	Press and hold button	Exit telephone menu

Symbols in the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 106.

Symbol	Importance	Valid for
	Charge status of the phone battery[a)]	GSM II, GSM III
	Signal strength[a)]	GSM II, GSM III
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM II, GSM III when connected via the HFP profile
	A phone is connected with the hands-free system	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system	GSM II, GSM III
3G	A UMTS network is available	GSM III
	Internet connection via the hands-free system	GSM III when connected via the rSAP profile

a) This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Phone Phonebook

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 106.

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the telephone's first connection to the hands-free system, the phone book from the phone and the SIM card loads into the hands-free memory.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this period, the available phone book is the one stored at the previous update. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

GSM II
The internal phonebook provides 2 500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system, a maximum of 1 200 telephone contacts are shown on the display of this appliance.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

GSM III
The internal phonebook provides 2 000 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 5 numbers.

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system, a maximum of 1 000 telephone contacts are shown on the display of this appliance.

If the mobile phone's telephone book has more than 2,000 contacts, the following message will appear in the information display:

Phone book not fully loaded

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system 109
Inserting the mobile phone and adapter 111
Managing telephone calls with the help of the adapter 111
Operate the telephone via the information display 112

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.
- Phone Phonebook » page 109.
- Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 107.
- Managing telephone calls via the adapter » page 111.
- Operation of the telephone via the information display » page 107.
- Voice control of the telephone » page 120.
- Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 124.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology. The adapter serves only for charging the telephone and for transmitting the signal to the vehicle's external aerial.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » page 106, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

- Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
- Switch on the ignition.

› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the information display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN[1] within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established[2].
› After terminating the connection, confirm the creation of a new user profile in the information display.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system

If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be reestablished for 3 minutes in the following ways.
› By turning the ignition off and on.
› By turning voice control off and on.
› Via the **Bluetooth** - **Visibility** menu item in the information display.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone
After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[2]. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection
› By withdrawing the ignition key.
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting the user in the **Bluetooth** - **User** menu item in the information display.

Solving connection problems

If the hands-free system reports **No paired phone found**, check the operating status of the mobile phone.
› Is the mobile phone switched on?
› Is the PIN code entered?
› Is Bluetooth® active?
› Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
› Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Note

▪ If a suitable adapter is available for your mobile phone, only use your mobile phone in the adapter inserted in the telephone mount so that the radiation in the vehicle drops to a minimum.
▪ Placing the mobile phone in the adapter inserted in the telephone mount ensures optimum sending and receiving power.

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.
[2] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a code. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

Inserting the mobile phone and adapter

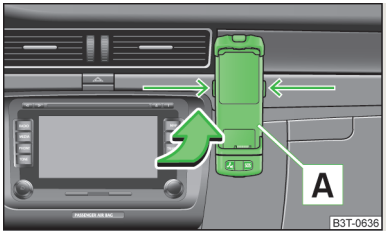


Fig. 114
Universal telephone preinstallation

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

Only one telephone mount is factory-fitted. An adapter for the mobile phone can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Inserting the adapter and mobile phone

› First of all push the adapter A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 114 up to the stop into the mount. Then press the adapter slightly downwards, until it locks securely into position.
› Insert the mobile phone into the adapter A (as specified in the instructions from the manufacturer of the adapter).

Removing the adapter and mobile phone

› Simultaneously press the locks on the mount » Fig. 114 and remove the adapter with the mobile phone.

CAUTION

Taking the mobile phone out of the adapter during the call can lead to interruption of the connection. When removing the mobile phone, the connection to the factory-fitted antenna is interrupted, which reduces the quality of the transmitting and receiving signal. The charging of the mobile phone battery is also interrupted.

Managing telephone calls with the help of the adapter

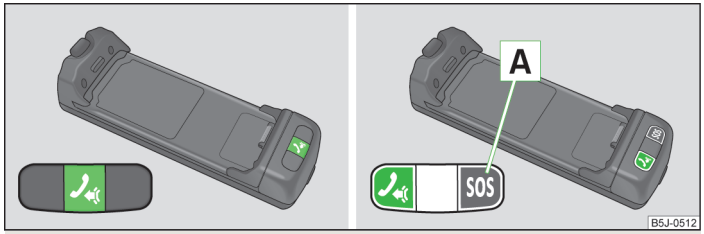


Fig. 115 **Principle sketch: Adapter with one button/adapter with two buttons**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

Function overview of the (PTT - "push to talk") button on the adapter » Fig. 115:
› Switch on/off voice control;
› Accept/end a call.

On some adapters include the button SOS A » Fig. 115 in addition to the button . After pressing this button for 2 seconds, the number 112 (Emergency call) is dialled.

Note

On vehicles fitted with the Columbus navigation system , the buttons and SOS do not work.

Operate the telephone via the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.
- **Phone book**
- **Dial number**[1)]
- **Call list**
- **Voice mailbox**
- **Bluetooth**[1)]
- **Settings**[2)]
- **Back**

Phone book
The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions.

Call list

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call list** menu item.
- **Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled numbers** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls** - list of received calls

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox[1)] and then dial the number.

Bluetooth

The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Playback via Bluetooth®
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Search** - Device search
- **Phone name** - Option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings

The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Telephone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update**[1)] - Update the phone book
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **First name** - Arrange according to first name
- **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting

Back
Return to the telephone's basic menu.

[1)] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.
[2)] This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Universal telephone preinstallation GSM III

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connecting the phone to the hands-free system 113
Operate the telephone via the information display 114
Internet connection via Bluetooth® 116

The following functions are included in the universal telephone preinstallation GSM III:
- Phone Phonebook » page 109.
- Convenience operation via the multifunction steering wheel » page 107.
- Operation of the telephone via the information display » page 114.
- Voice control of the telephone » page 120.
- Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 124.
- Internet connection » page 116.
- Display of SMS messages » page 115.

All communication between a telephone and the hands-free system of your vehicle can only be established with the help of the following profiles of Bluetooth® technology.

rSAP - Remote SIM access profile
After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the **rSAP** profile, the telephone deregisters from the GSM network, and communication with the network is only enabled by the hands-free system via the vehicle's external aerial. In the telephone only the interface for Bluetooth® remains active. In this case, you can only use the mobile phone to disconnect from the hands-free system, deactivate the Bluetooth® connection or dial the emergency number 112 (only valid in some countries).

HFP - Hands Free Profile
After connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the **HFP** profile, the telephone continues to use its GMS module and the internal antenna to communicate with the GSM network.

Note

The following guidelines must be observed » page 106, *Mobile phones and two-way radio systems*.

Connecting the phone to the hands-free system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, it is necessary to interconnect the telephone and hands-free system. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone. The following steps must be carried out for the connection.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the rSAP profile
› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone. For certain mobile phones it is necessary to switch on first the **rSAP** function.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the information display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› If your SIM card is blocked by a PIN code, enter the PIN code for the SIM card in your phone. The telephone connects to the hands-free system (during the first connection you can only enter the PIN code in the information display when the vehicle is stationary, as this is the only situation when you can choose whether the PIN code should be stored).
› Follow the instructions in the information display, the first time a new user is stored.
› Reconfirm the **rSAP** command on your mobile phone to download the telephone book and the identification data from the SIM card into the hands-free system.

Connecting the telephone with the hands-free system via the HPP profile
› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the information display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[1].
› Follow the instructions on the information display and the mobile phone to store a new user or to download the telephone book and identification data from the SIM card into the hands-free system.

The telephone primarily connects via the **rSAP** profile.

If the PIN code was stored, the telephone is automatically detected and connected with the hands-free system the next time the ignition is switched on. Check your mobile phone to see whether this automatic connection has been established.

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) will either be displayed, or a 16-digit code displayed in the information display will need to be entered into your mobile phone and confirmed within 30 seconds by following the instructions on your mobile phone display.

Disconnecting the connection

› By removing the key from the ignition lock (the connection is disconnected during a telephone call).
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting the user in the menu item **Bluetooth** - **User** - Select user - **Disconnect**.

On vehicles which are fitted with a radio or navigation system at the factory, it is possible to terminate the telephone call after removing the key from the ignition lock by pressing the button on the touchscreen of the radio[1)] or navigation system; refer to the operating instructions for the radio or navigation system.

Note

- In the memory of the hands-free system, up to three users can be stored, whereby the hands-free system can only communicate actively with one user. If a connection is established with a fourth mobile phone, one of the users must be deleted.
- When connecting to the hands-free system, follow the instructions on your mobile phone.

Operate the telephone via the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

If no phone is connected to the hands-free system, the message **No paired phone found** appears along with the following menu items when the **Mobile phone** menu is selected.

- **Help** - This menu item appears when no paired phone is stored in the memory of the hands-free system.
- **Connect** - This menu item appears when one or more paired phones are stored in the memory of the hands-free system.
- **New user** - New phone
- **Media player** - Media player
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Search** - Device search
  - **Visibility** - Visibility on/off
- **SOS** - Emergency

If a telephone is paired with the hands-free system, the following menu items can be selected in the **Mobile phone** menu.

Phone book

The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

The following functions are available for each phone contact.

- Display telephone number
- **Voice tag** - Voice tag for the contact
  - **Replay** - Play a voice tag
  - **Record** - Record a voice contact

Dial number

Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Delete**, **Call** and **Back** functions.

Call list

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call list** menu item.

- **Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Received calls** - List of received calls
- **Dialled numbers** - List of dialled numbers
- **Delete lists** - Delete call registers

Voice mailbox

In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set or save the number of the voice mailbox and then dial the number. The required digits must be selected one after the other using the adjustment wheel, and then confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** and the **Delete**, **Call**, **Save** and **Back** functions.

1) Does not apply for Radio Swing.

SMS[1)]

A list of received text messages is displayed in the **SMS** menu item. After calling a message, the following functions appear.
- **Show** - Display text message
- **Read** - The system reads out the selected text message through the vehicle's speakers
- **Send time** - Display message send time
- **Callback** - Dial the phone number of the sender of the text message
- **Copy** - Copy the received text message to the SIM card
- **Delete** - Delete the message

Bluetooth

The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
  - **Connect** - Connection with the telephone
  - **Disconnect** - Disconnection of telephone
  - **Rename** - Rename the telephone
  - **Delete** - Delete the telephone
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Media player
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
    - **Connect** - Connection with the device
    - **Rename** - Rename the device
    - **Delete** - Delete the device
    - **Authorisation** - Authorise the device
  - **Search** - Search for available media players
  - **Visibility** - Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for media players in the vicinity
- **Modem** - Overview of the active and paired devices for the connection to the internet
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
- **Phone name** - Option to change the name of the hands-free system (default SKODA_BT)

WLAN

Wi-Fi menu item » page 117, *Operating a Wi-Fi network in the information display*.

Settings

The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Telephone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update** - Read in the phone book
  - **Select memory** - Select memory with phone contacts
    - **SIM & phone** - Download the contacts of the SIM card and the phone
    - **SIM card** - Download the contacts from the SIM card
    - **Mobile phone** - Initial setting to also import contacts from the SIM card; it is necessary to switch to the **SIM & phone** menu item
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **First name** - Arrange according to first name
- **Own number** - Optionally display your own telephone number on the display of the device of the person you are calling (this function is network-dependent)
  - **Network depnd.** - Network-dependent own number display
  - **Yes** - Allow display of your own number
  - **No** - Prohibit display of your own number
- **Signal settings** - Signal settings
  - **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting
  - **Volume** - Volume settings
    - **Turn vol. up** - Increase volume
    - **Turn vol. down** - Decrease volume
- **Phone settings** - Phone settings
  - **Select operator** - Select operator
    - **Automatic** - Automatic operator selection
    - **Manual** - Manual operator selection
  - **Network mode** - Network mode
    - **UMTS** - UMTS
    - **GSM** - GSM
    - **Automatic** - Automatic
  - **SIM mode** - Applies to telephones with the rSAP profile that simultaneously support the operation of two SIM cards - there is an option to choose which SIM card to connect to the hands-free system
    - **SIM mode 1** - SIM 1 is connected to the hands-free system
    - **SIM mode 2** - SIM 2 is connected to the hands-free system

[1)] Only applies when connecting the telephone to the hands-free system via the rSAP profile.

- **Phone mode** - Toggle between rSAP and HFP mode
  - **Premium** - rSAP mode
  - **Handsfree** - HFP mode
- **Off time** - Set the off time in increments of 5 min
- **Access point** - Set the Internet access point
  - **APN** - Change the access point name
  - **User name** - User Name
  - **Password** - Password
- **Switch off ph.** - Switch off the hands-free system (the mobile phone remains paired)

Back
Return in the main menu of the information display.

Internet connection via Bluetooth®

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 112.

A notebook can, for example, be connected to the Internet via the hands-free system.

The control unit of the hands-free system supports the GPRS, EDGE and UMTS/3G technologies.

An Internet can only be established via a telephone which is connected via the rSAP profile.

The procedure for connecting to the Internet can vary depending on the type and version of the operating system as well as the type of the device to be connected. Successfully connecting to the internet requires appropriate knowledge of the operating system for connecting the device .

Process of connection
› Connect the mobile phone with the hands-free system.
› Set the access point in the **Mobile phone** - **Settings** - **Access point** menu (depending on the operator, usually "Internet").
› Switch on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices in the **Mobile phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Visibility** menu.
› Use the device that is to be connected to search for available Bluetooth® devices.
› Select the hands-free system (as standard "SKODA_BT") from the list of found devices.
› Enter the password on the device being connected and follow any instructions given on this device or in the information display.
› Enter the desired Internet address in the Internet browser. The operating system requests the entry of the telephone number for the internet access (depending on the operator, usually "*99#").

Wi-Fi

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching Wi-Fi network on/off 116
Connecting an external device to the Wi-Fi network 117
Operating a Wi-Fi network in the information display 117

Wi-Fi is a wireless network for connecting to the Internet.

Using a mobile phone connected with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile, it is possible to establish a Wi-Fi network in the vehicle and to enable passengers with compatible devices to connect to this network.

Switching Wi-Fi network on/off

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 116.

Switching on
› Connect the mobile phone with the universal telephone preparation GSM III via the rSAP profile » page 113.
› Select the **Wi-Fi** menu item in the **Mobile phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch on Wi-Fi?*

› Select the **Yes** menu item.

If no access point[1)] is assigned automatically, then this must be entered manually as per the instructions from the mobile network operator, e.g. "Internet".

[1)] The name of the access point is defined by the mobile operator.

If the Wi-Fi network is switched on, the display will show the following message, for example: *WLAN SK_WLAN 1234 switched on.*

The display then shows a password for the Wi-Fi network connection. The password can subsequently be found in the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Password** - **Show** menu.

If no data connection via Wi-Fi is available, the display will show the message *Data connection not available*. This can be caused by a weak GSM signal, for example. Try to establish the connection again at a location with stronger signal reception.

Switching off

› Select the **Wi-Fi** - **Off** menu item in the **Mobile phone** menu.

The display shows the message *Switch off Wi-Fi?*

› Select the **OK** menu item.

The display shows the message *Wi-Fi switch off.*

Connecting an external device to the Wi-Fi network

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 116.

Connecting using the Wi-Fi network search

› Switch on the Wi-Fi network » page 116, *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
› On the device to be connected, search for available Wi-Fi networks (Wi-Fi) - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.
› Select the appropriate Wi-Fi network connection in the menu of the networks found (e.g. *Wi-Fi SK_WLAN 1234*).

If menu item **WPA2** is set in the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Settings** - **Encryption** menu, then the password displayed when the Wi-Fi is switched on must be entered in the device to be connected. The password can be found in the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Password** - **Show** menu.

If menu item **Open** is set in the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **Settings** - **Encryption** menu, the connection is made automatically.

Connecting using WPS (service for easy connection)

› Switch on the Wi-Fi network » page 116, *Switching Wi-Fi network on/off*.
› Open the **Mobile phone** - **Wi-Fi** - **WPS config.** menu in the instrument cluster.
› In the device to be connected, select the connection using WPS function - see operating instructions for the device to be connected.

If the **Pushbutton** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, the Wi-Fi connection is made automatically.

If the **WPS PIN** menu item is selected in the instrument cluster, then a PIN must be entered in the device to be connected and the instrument cluster.

Operating a Wi-Fi network in the information display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 116.

When a Wi-Fi network is switched on, the following menu items are displayed when the **Wi-Fi** menu item is selected.

- **Off** - Switch off the Wi-Fi network (depending on the context)
- **Device List** - Display a list of external devices
  - **Active device** - Display a list of active devices
    - **Block** - Block device connections
  - **Known devices** - Display a list of known devices
    - **Rename** - Rename the device
    - **Block** - Block device connections
  - **Device blocked** - Display a list of blocked devices
    - **Unblock** - Remove the connection block
  - **Delete lists** - Delete device lists
    - **Known devices** - Delete the list of known devices
    - **Device blocked** - Delete the list of blocked devices
    - **Both lists** - Delete both device lists
- **Password** - Use of password to log on to the Wi-Fi network
  - **Show** - Display a password to log on to the Wi-Fi network
  - **Generate** - Generate a new password to log on to the Wi-Fi network
- **Wi-Fi name** - Use of Wi-Fi network name
  - **Show** - Display the Wi-Fi network name
  - **Rename** - Rename the Wi-Fi network
- **WPS config.** - Wi-Fi network connection using WPS
  - **Pushbutton** - Automatic connection
  - **WPS PIN** - PIN entry for the connection
- **Data counter** - Display information about the volume of data transferred
  - **Current conn.** - Display the volume of data transferred for the current connection
  - **Total** - Display the total volume of data transferred
  - **Reset** - Reset the information about the volume of data transferred

- **Settings** - Wi-Fi network settings
  - **Access point** - Access point settings
    - **Settings** - Access point management
      - **APN** - Change the access point name
      - **User name** - User Name
      - **Password** - Password
    - **Reset** - Reset access point factory settings
  - **Prioritisation** - Set the connection priority
    - **Calls** - Set the connection priority for calls
    - **Data** - Set the connection priority for data transfer
  - **Encryption** - Set the encryption
    - **WPA2** - Enable WPA 2 encryption
    - **Open** - No encryption
  - **Visibility** - Set the Wi-Fi network visibility
    - **Visible** - Wi-Fi network is visible to other devices
    - **Invisible** - Wi-Fi network is not visible to other devices
  - **Data roaming** - Set the data roaming
    - **No roaming** - Data roaming is not allowed
    - **Allow** - Data roaming is allowed
    - **Always ask** - Question setting for data roaming
  - **Wi-Fi channel** - Select Wi-Fi network channels (preferably set to channel 11)
    - **Channel 1** ... **Channel 11** - Display the Wi-Fi network channels
  - **Reset** - Reset Wi-Fi network factory settings

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue 120
Voice commands - GSM II 121
Voice commands - GSM III 121

Dialogue

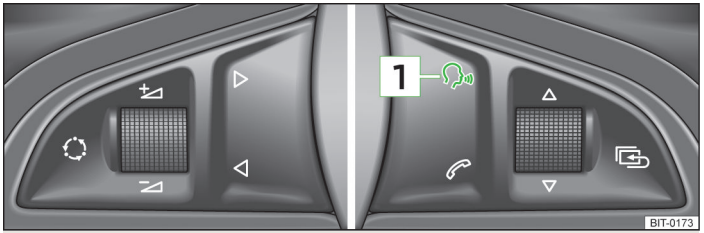


Fig. 116 **Multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 120.

The voice control system (hereinafter referred to as the system) makes it possible to use voice commands for some functions of the hands-free system.

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called a dialogue. The system gives audible feedback and guides you if necessary through the relevant functions.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.

› Speak with a normal tone of voice without intonation and excessive pauses.
› Avoid a bad pronunciation.
› Close the doors, windows and sliding roof, to reduce or stop disturbing exterior noise.
› You are recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the sound of your voice is not drowned out by the increased ambient noise.
› During the dialogue, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
› Do not speak, if the system makes an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is inserted in the moulded headliner and directed to the driver and front passenger. Therefore the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number

The telephone number can be entered as a continuous series of individually spoken digits (the whole number at once) or in the form of digital blocks (separated by short pauses). After each order of digits (separation through brief voice pause) all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0 - 9**, symbols **+, ✳, #** are permitted. The system detects no continuous digit combinations such as twenty-three, but only individually spoken digits (two, three).

Activating voice control - GSM II

› by briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 116 on the multifunction steering wheel;
› by briefly pressing the button on the adapter[1] » Fig. 115 on page 111.

Deactivating voice control - GSM II

If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played will have to be stopped:

› by briefly pressing the button on the adapter[1] » Fig. 115 on page 111;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system expects a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:

› with the **CANCEL** voice command;
› by pressing the button on the adapter[1] » Fig. 115 on page 111;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Activating voice control - GSM III

The dialogue can be started at any time by pressing the button 1 » Fig. 116 on the multifunction steering wheel[1].

Deactivating voice control - GSM III

If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by pressing the button 1 » Fig. 116 on the multi-function steering wheel.

[1] Not valid for vehicles with the Columbus navigation system.

If the system expects a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:
› with the **CANCEL** voice command;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 116 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note

- The dialogue of an incoming call is immediately interrupted.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control or a phone mount and adapter.
- On vehicles that are factory-fitted with the Columbus navigation system, it is only possible to operate the voice control for the telephone via this device » *Operating instructions for the Columbus navigation system*, chapter *Voice control for the navigation system*.

Voice commands - GSM II

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 120.

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command, the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL HISTORY	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered in order to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC[a)]	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

a) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Sorry?**", and a new entry can be made. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd Failure is the answer " **Operation aborted.** " and ends the dialogue.

Storing voice recording for a contact
If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **Further options** menu.

Voice commands - GSM III

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 120.

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command, the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL NAME	After this command, a name can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered in order to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	The last selected telephone number is selected.
READ ADDRESSBOOK	The system reads out contacts from the telephone book.
READ MESSAGES	The system reads the messages which were received while the telephone was connected to the control unit.
SHORT DIALOGUE	The help is significantly reduced (good operating knowledge provided).

Voice command	Action
LONG DIALOGUE	The help is not reduced (suitable for beginners).
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

If the system does not recognise the command, it repeats the first part of the help thus enabling a new entry to be completed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the second part of the aid. After the 3rd Failure is the answer " **Operation aborted.** " and ends the dialogue.

Storing voice recording for a contact
If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice tag can also be saved using the voice control in the **Further options** menu.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth® 124
Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel 124
AUX-IN and MDI inputs 125
CD change 126
DVD-preinstallation 126

Music playback via Bluetooth®

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 124.

The universal telephone preinstallation makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from devices such as MP3 players, mobile phones or notebooks.

To ensure that music can be played via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » page 121, *Voice commands - GSM II*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel

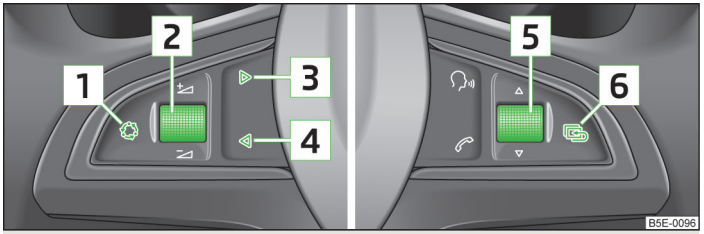


Fig. 117 **Multifunction steering wheel: control buttons**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 124.

The multifunction steering wheel comprises buttons for setting the basic functions for the factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 117.

The radio and navigation system can of course still be operated on the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio, audio, video or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button/ wheel	Action	Radio	TV	Audio sources	DVD video	Navigation
1	Press	Change audio source				
2	Press	Switch tone off/on (MUTE)				Interrupt current navigation announcement
2	Turn upwards	Increase the volume				
2	Turn downwards	Decrease the volume				
3	Press briefly	Skip to next channel	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	Skip to next chapter	No function
		Stop traffic announcement				
3	Press and hold button	No function		Fast forward		No function
4	Press briefly	Switch to previous channel	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track[a]	Switch to previous chapter	No function
		Stop traffic announcement				
4	Press and hold button	No function		Fast rewind		No function
5	Turn upwards	Switch to previous channel and display List of stored/accessible channels	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	Skip to next chapter	Show the option to stop navigation or display the list of recent destinations
5	Turn downwards	Switch to the next channel and display List of stored / accessible channels	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track[a]	Switch to previous chapter	
6	Press briefly	Call up the main menu				

[a] To go to the previous track, press the adjustment wheel twice or rotate it by two positions.

AUX-IN and MDI inputs

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 124.

The AUX-IN and MDI inputs are used to connect external audio sources (e.g. iPod or mp3 player) and to play back music from these devices via the factory-fitted radio or navigation system.

The AUX-IN input is located in the storage compartment below the front armrest and is marked with **AUX**.

The MDI input is located in the storage compartment below the front armrest.

For a description of use, refer to the operating instructions for the relevant radio or navigation system.

CD change

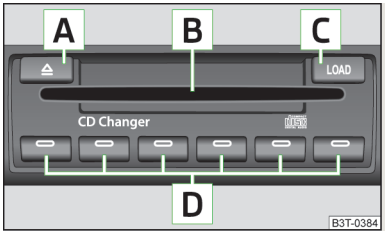


Fig. 118
The CD changer

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 124.

The CD changer for the radio and navigation system is located in the right side compartment of the boot.

Inserting the CD

› Touch the button C » Fig. 118 and guide the CD (compact disc) into the CD-case B. The CD is automatically loaded onto the lowest free position in the CD changer. The indicator light in the corresponding button D stops flashing.

Filling the CD changer with CDs

› Press and hold the button C » Fig. 118 for longer than 2 seconds and guide the CDs one after the other (maximum 6 CDs) into the CD case B. The indicator lights in the buttons D stop flashing.

Inserting a CD at a specific position

› Press the button C » Fig. 118. The indicator lights in the buttons D illuminate the memory spaces that are already assigned and flash in the case of free memory spaces.
› Touch the desired button D and guide the CD into the CD-case B.

Ejecting a CD

› Press the button A » Fig. 118 to eject a CD. For assigned memory spaces, the indicator lights now illuminate in the buttons D.
› Press the corresponding button D. The CD is ejected.

Ejecting all CDs

› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 118 for more than 2 seconds. All CDs in the CD-changer are ejected consecutively.

Note

- Always guide the CD into the CD case B » Fig. 118 with the printed side facing upwards.
- Never force the CD into the CD case as it is drawn in automatically.
- After loading a CD into the CD changer, wait until the indicator light of the corresponding button D is illuminated. Then the CD case B is free to load the next CD.
- If a position is selected, on which a CD is already located, this CD is ejected. Remove the ejected CD and load the desired CD.

DVD-preinstallation

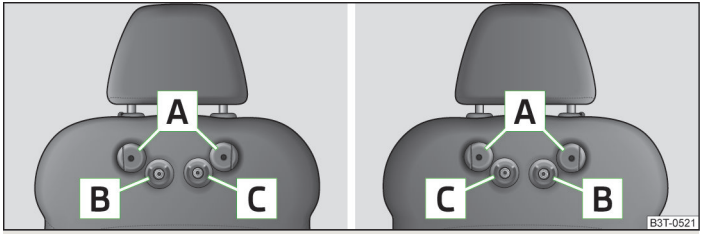


Fig. 119 **Seat backrest - left front seat/right front seat**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 124.

Description

A Openings for attachment of DVD player holder
B Audio/video input
C Connection input, DVD player

Only one DVD pre-installation is factory-installed in the seat backrest of the front seat.

The DVD player holder and DVD player can be purchased from ŠKODA original accessories. For a description of the use, refer to the operating instructions for these devices and equipment.

WARNING

- If there are passengers on both of the rear seats, the DVD player holder must not be used on its own (without the DVD player) - risk of injury!
- The inclination of the holder can be adjusted to three preset positions. Be careful not to injure fingers between the holder and the backrest when changes to the position of the DVD player holder are made.
- The DVD player holder must not be used when the rear seat backrest or the rear seat is folded forward or has been removed completely.

Note

Follow the instructions given in the operating instructions of the DVD player holder/DVD player.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Steering

Introduction

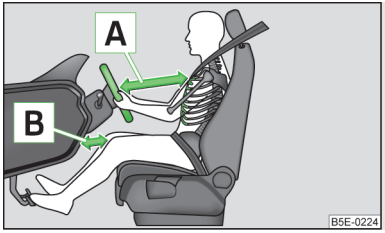


Fig. 120
Correct seated position for the driver

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the steering wheel position ____ 129
Power steering ____ 129

WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A » Fig. 120 between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm. Adjust the distance between your legs and the dash panel in the area of the knee airbag to at least 10 cm B. If you do not comply with the minimum distance, the airbag system may not be able to properly protect you - risk to life!
- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position during the journey – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- If the steering wheel is adjusted further towards the head, the protection provided by the driver airbag in the event of an accident is reduced. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.

WARNING

- When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position 2 » Fig. 122 on page 130 (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the indicator lights coming on. If this is not the case, this could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel – risk of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise, the steering could be blocked – risk of accident!

Note

We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

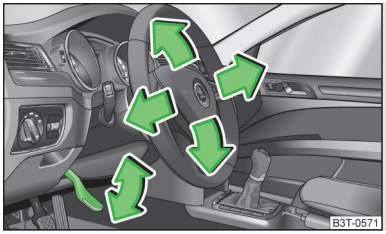


Fig. 121
Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 128.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› First of all adjust the driver's seat » page 65.
› Pull the lever below the steering wheel down » Fig. 121.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
› Push the lever upwards to the stop.

Power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 128.

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

It is still fully possible to steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (e.g. when towing). However, greater physical effort is required to turn the steering wheel.

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobiliser 130
Ignition lock 130
Starting the engine 130
Switching off the engine 131

Starting and stopping the engine on vehicles with the KESSY system » page 34.

The engine can only be started using a correctly coded original key.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

! WARNING

- When leaving the vehicle, the ignition must always be removed. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Children could otherwise start the engine for example – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) – risk to life! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

! CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- If the engine does not start after the second attempt, the fuse for the electric fuel pump (in petrol engines) or for the control unit for the glow plug system or the relay for the glow plug system and fuel pump (in diesel engines) could be faulty. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 237, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

▪ Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
▪ Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 228, *Jump-starting*.
▪ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Electronic immobiliser

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 129.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Immobilizer active.

Ignition lock

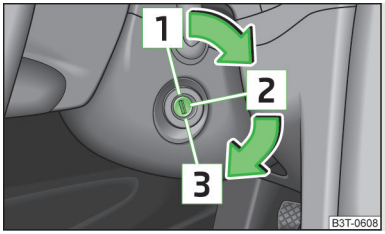


Fig. 122
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 129.

Petrol engines » Fig. 122

1 Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Diesel engines » Fig. 122

1 Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked.
2 Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot or can only be turned with difficulty into the position 2 » Fig. 122, move the steering wheel back and forth and the steering lock will unlock.

Starting the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 129.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light illuminates after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine after the warning light has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N** and firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 122 on page 130.
› Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 to the stop and release immediately after the engine has been started – do not apply the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

› Release the handbrake.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Depress clutch to start!
CLUTCH

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message appears in the display.

Apply the brake to start.
BRAKE

Switching off the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 129.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key into position 1 » Fig. 122 on page 130.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking and locking the steering – KESSY 132
Switching on the ignition 133
Starting the engine 133
Switching off the ignition 133
Switching off the engine 133
Emergency engine start 134
Emergency ignition shut-off system 134

The KESSY system makes it possible to switch the ignition on/off and to start/stop the engine without actively using the key.

A key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, switch on the steering and start the vehicle.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Children could otherwise start the engine for example – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) – risk to life! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

CAUTION

▪ The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
▪ If the engine does not start after the second attempt, the fuse for the electric fuel pump (in petrol engines) or for the control unit for the glow plug system or the relay for the glow plug system and fuel pump (in diesel engines) could be faulty. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 237, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
▪ Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 228, *Jump-starting*.
▪ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Note

▪ After pressing the starter button while the steering is locked, the steering is unlocked, the electrical components are activated (e.g. radio, navigation system etc.) and the igntion is switched on.
▪ If you do not leave the vehicle after locking the steering and wish to unlock the steering again, press the starter button. At the same time, electrical components are activated (e.g. radio, navigation system etc.) and the ignition is switched on.
▪ The KESSY system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 134.
▪ The steering is not unlocked or locked if the starter button is repeatedly pressed at short intervals.

Unlocking and locking the steering – KESSY

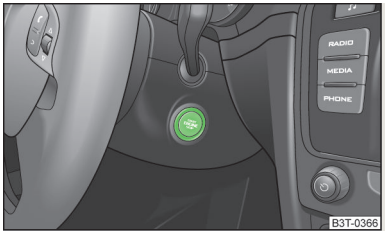


Fig. 123
Starter button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

Unlocking
› Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
› Close the driver's door.

The steering is unlocked within 2 seconds.

Locking
› Stop the vehicle.
› Switch off the engine or the ignition by pressing the starter button » Fig. 123.
› Open the driver door.

The steering is locked. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle is locked.

If the steering is locked and the KESSY system does not manage to unlock the steering lock the first time (e.g. if the wheels are resting against the curb), the attempt will be repeated twice by the system.

If the steering lock is then not unlocked, the following information is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Move the steering wheel!
MOVE STEERING WHEEL

Slightly move the steering and the system will complete 3 more attempts to unlock after 2 seconds. At the same time, the indicator light flashes.

If the steering lock is not then unlocked, the following message is shown in the instrument cluster display for 10 seconds:

Steering wheel still locked.

Eliminate the possible cause which is preventing the unlocking and then repeat the attempt to unlock the steering.

Switching on the ignition

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

The steering must be unlocked to switch on the ignition.

› Briefly press the starter button » Fig. 123 on page 132 and the ignition is switched on.

If the ignition is switched on and the driver's door is opened, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Switch off ignition!

Starting the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light illuminates after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine after the warning light has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N** and firmly apply the handbrake.
› Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
› Press the starter button » Fig. 123 on page 132 briefly – the engine starts.
› Release the handbrake.

Vehicles with manual transmission
The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Depress clutch to start!
CLUTCH

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message appears in the display.

Apply the brake to start.
BRAKE

Switching off the ignition

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

› Briefly press the starter button » Fig. 123 on page 132 and the ignition is switched off.

The ignition can be switched off up to a speed of 2 km/h.

On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed to switch off the ignition, otherwise the system will try to start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the selector lever must be in position **P** or **N** and the brake pedal must not be depressed, otherwise the system will try to start.

Switching off the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

› Stop the vehicle.
› Switch off the engine by pressing the starter button » Fig. 123 on page 132, doing so switches off the ignition at the same time.

Emergency engine start

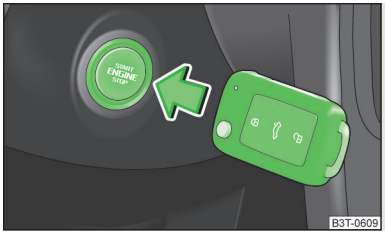


Fig. 124
Emergency start-up of engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

If the authorisation check for the key fails, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Key not found.

NO KEY

The emergency start-up must be completed.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 124 and then hold the key to the starter button.

or

› Press the starter button directly with the key.

Note

During an emergency start-up of the engine, the key bit must face the starter button » Fig. 124.

Emergency ignition shut-off system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 131.

In an emergency, it is possible to switch off the ignition even at speeds greater than 2 km/h, by using the "emergency ignition shutoff system".

› Press the starter button » Fig. 123 on page 132 for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

Braking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information for braking 134
Handbrake 135

WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- The clutch pedal must be actuated when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the function of the brake booster may be impaired – risk of accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 140.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information for braking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 134.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between service intervals.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 14, *Braking system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake

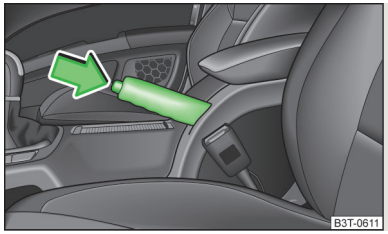


Fig. 125
Centre console: Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 134.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 125.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake indicator light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 136
Pedals 136

Manual gear changing

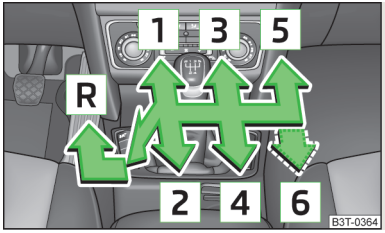


Fig. 126
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or 6 gear manual gearbox

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Observe the recommended gear » page 22.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and selector lever operation 137
Manual gear changing (Tiptronic) 138
Starting off and driving 138
Operational faults 139

WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the forward driving mode – risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
- When the vehicle is stationery and the engine is running, the vehicle must be held in mode **D**, **S** or **R** with the brake pedal. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- At temperatures below -10 °C, the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P**.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Modes and selector lever operation

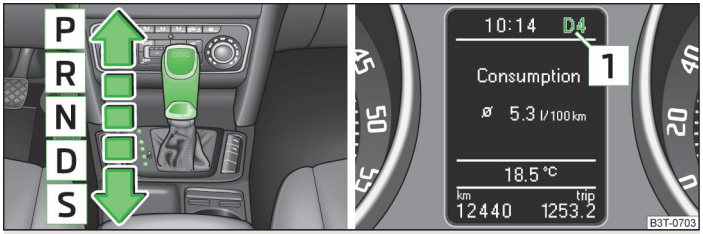


Fig. 127 **Selector lever/Instrument cluster display**



Fig. 128
Shiftlock button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 136.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the instrument cluster display 1 » Fig. 127.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 127.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

Before moving into mode **R** from mode **P** or **N**, depress the brake pedal and press the locking button at the same time » Fig. 128.

N - Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)
In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)
In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down **at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D**, press the locking button » Fig. 128

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
The selector lever is locked in modes **P** and **N** to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 20.

The selector lever is released by depressing the brake pedal while the pressing lock button at the same time » Fig. 128.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving via position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being accidentally selected.

Manual gear changing (Tiptronic)

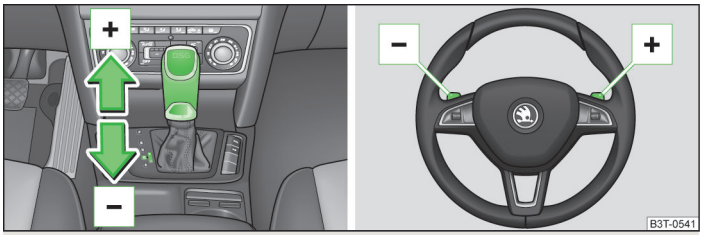


Fig. 129 **Selector lever and multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 136.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster display 1 » Fig. 127 on page 137.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 22.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the selector lever to the right out of position **D**.

Shifting up gears
› Press the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 129.
› Pull the right-hand rocker switch + » Fig. 129 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears
› Press the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 129.
› Pull the left-hand rocker switch - » Fig. 129 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switch to manual gear changing in mode D or S
› Pull one of the rocker switches -/+ briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 129.

If one of the rocker switches -/+ is not pulled for more than 1 minute, manual gear changing is deactivated. The temporary switch to manual gear changing can also be deactivated by pulling the right-hand rocker switch + towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » page 134.

Starting off and driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 136.

Starting off
› Start the engine.

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press and hold the lock button » Fig. 128 on page 137.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 137 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Parking
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Press and hold the lock button » Fig. 128 on page 137.
› Move the selector lever into the position **P** and then release the locking button.

Launch control[1)]
The Launch control function allows the vehicle to reach maximum acceleration when starting off in mode **S** or Tiptronic.

› Activate the ASR » page 147, *Brake assist systems*.
› Deactivate START-STOP » page 158 .
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

Reactivate the ASR and START-STOP as soon as the desired speed is reached.

Kickdown
The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

[1)] This function is only valid for some engines.

WARNING

▪ Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Operational faults

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 136.

Emergency programme
The transmission switches to the emergency programme, if there is a fault in system of the automatic gearbox.

Indications of an activated emergency programme include the following:
› Only certain gears are selected.
› The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
› Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

Gearbox overheating
The gearbox may, for example, become too hot due to frequent repeated starting or stop-and-go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning light » page 12, *Clutches of the automatic gearbox are too hot*.

Defective selector lever lock
If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner, and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » page 234.

Note

If the gearbox has switched to the emergency programme, visit a specialist garage.

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine 140
New tyres 140
New brake pads 140

New engine

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 140.

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres
› Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed for the selected gear.
› No full throttle.
› Avoid high engine speeds.
› Do not tow a trailer.

From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres
Gradually increase the driving performance up to the full speed of the selected gear.

The red scale of the rev counter indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds even after the running-in period.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. **Very** high engine speeds when accelerating (depressing the accelerator pedal) are automatically restricted » !.

In vehicles with manual transmission, do not drive at unnecessarily **low** engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » page 22, *Recommended gear*.

CAUTION

▪ The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in a sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm, thereby causing engine damage.
▪ Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save fuel, reduces engine noise and protects the environment.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 140.

New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first. Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 140.

New brake pads do not initially provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Economical driving and environmental sustainability

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Looking ahead 141
Economical gear changing 141
Avoiding full throttle 142
Reducing idling 142

Avoiding short distances 142
Checking tyre inflation pressure 142
Avoiding unnecessary ballast 143
Regular maintenance 143
Saving electrical energy 143
Environmental compatibility 143

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:
› your personal driving style
› operating conditions
› technical requirements

The fuel economy by can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also be influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

Looking ahead

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Economical gear changing

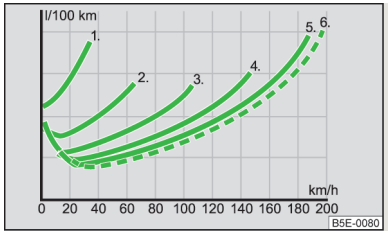


Fig. 130
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox
› Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
› Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2000 rpm.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » page 22, *Recommended gear*.

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » Fig. 130.

Automatic gearbox
› **Slowly** apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it to the kickdown position.
› An economic driving programme is automatically selected if the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly.

Avoiding full throttle

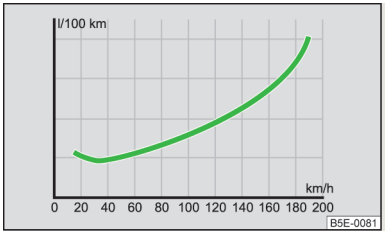


Fig. 131
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

Driving more slowly saves fuel.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The » Fig. 131 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

Reducing idling

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30 - 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started, whereby high engine speeds should be avoided.

Avoiding short distances

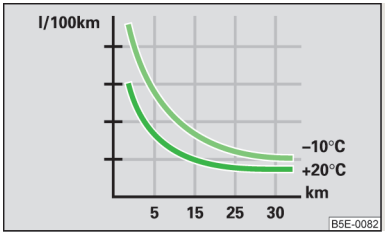


Fig. 132
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The image » Fig. 132 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and a temperature of -10 °C.

The vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer.

Checking tyre inflation pressure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyres will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoiding unnecessary ballast

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each kilogramme of **weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore, we recommend to carry no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, your vehicle that is fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Regular maintenance

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

Check the **oil level** at regular intervals, e.g. when filling up. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5 000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.

Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

Saving electrical energy

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

Environmental compatibility

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 140.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, material selection and production of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures

› Joints designed to be easily detached.
› Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
› Improved purity of different classes of materials.
› Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
› Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO_2.

› Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
› Reduced noise.

Choice of materials
› Extensive use of recyclable material.
› Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
› No cadmium.
› No asbestos.
› Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture
› Solvent-free cavity protection.
› Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
› The use of solvent-free adhesives.
› No CFCs used in the production process.
› Without use of mercury.
› Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars
ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always [1] be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information 144
Driving through water 145

General information

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 144.

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.
› When driving on poorly maintained roads and paths.
› When driving over kerbs.
› When driving on steep ramps etc.

Particular attention must be paid with vehicles with sport suspension and when the vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water

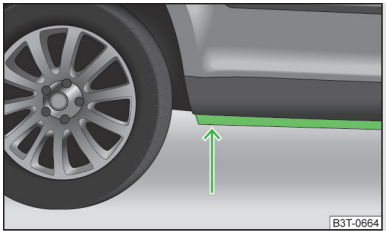


Fig. 133
Driving through water

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 144.

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Determine the depth of the water before driving through.

The water level must not reach above the bar on the lower beam » Fig. 133.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air induction system or other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.
› Deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 156, *START-STOP*.

WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can impair the braking power and increase the braking distance – risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

CAUTION

- When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unleaded petrol 145
Headlights 146

In certain countries, it may be possible that the ŠKODA Partner network is limited or has not been established. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 145.

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » page 200, *Unleaded petrol*. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 145.

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

Headlights with Xenon lights can be adjusted in the menu of the information display » page 51.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 147
Antilock Braking System (ABS) 148
Traction Control System (ASR) 148
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 148
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) 148
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 149
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 149

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage or the extent to which this is limiting the braking efficiency.

CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » page 196.

Note

If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL will also not work. An ABS fault is indicated by the warning light » page 17.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

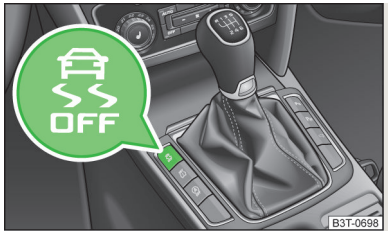


Fig. 134
ESC system: TCS button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 147.

The ESC system helps improve control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. Depending on the conditions of the road surface, the risk of skidding is reduced, thereby improving the vehicle's driving stability .

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. In the event of deviations, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.
› Antilock Brake System (ABS) » page 148.
› Traction control (ASR) » page 148.
› Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) » page 148.
› Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) » page 148.
› Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) » page 149.
› Hill Hold Control (HHC) » page 149.
› Trailer stabilisation (TSA) » page 160, *Towing a trailer*.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The » Fig. 134 symbol button can only be used to deactivate the ASR.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 147.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (ASR)



Fig. 135
TCS button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 147.

If the wheels are slipping, the TCS adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The TCS function is activated automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 147.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

The ASR can be deactivated via the symbol button ASR OFF » Fig. 135.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

Ensure the TCS is activated again afterwards.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 147.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

The EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 147.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 147.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 147.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active on slopes of 5% and steeper, provided that the driver's door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 150
Visual parking system 150

WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the P symbol flashing in the » Fig. 136 on page 150 button. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the system to operate properly.

Note

- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- The parking aid tones can be adjusted via the information display in the **Assistants** menu item » page 27.
- If the system is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in position **P** (the vehicle cannot move), the warning tone is interrupted and no obstacles are displayed.
- Additionally installed modules such as bicycle carriers can impair the function of the parking aid.

Operation

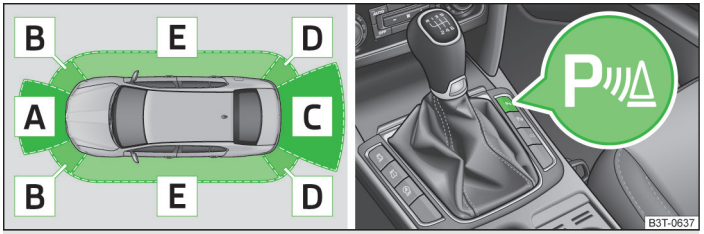


Fig. 136 **Parking aid: Range of sensors/parking aid button on vehicles with front and rear sensors**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

The parking aid (hereafter referred to solely as system) only works when the ignition is switched on.

The system assists the driver by giving acoustic signals and displaying information on the screen of the navigation system or the radio when parking and manoeuvring » page 150, *Visual parking system*.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasound sensors are located on the front/rear bumper.

Explanation of graphic - range of sensors in the vicinity of the vehicle

Area » Fig. 136	Range of sensors[a)]
A	120 cm
B	60 cm
C	160 cm
D	60 cm
E[b)]	60 cm

a) These are only the approximate ranges of sensors.
b) Applies only for vehicles with 12 sensors.

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device. The danger area thus begins at a distance of around 35 cm on vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device.

Activation/deactivation
The system is automatically activated by selecting **reverse gear** or pressing the P symbol button. » Fig. 136 The symbol P lights up in the button; activation is confirmed by a brief acoustic signal.

The system is deactivated by moving out of reverse gear or by pressing the P symbol button, or is deactivated automatically at a speed of over 10 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

On vehicles which **only have rear sensors**, the system can only be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

Towing a trailer
On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only system areas A and B » Fig. 136 are active when towing a trailer.

Visual parking system

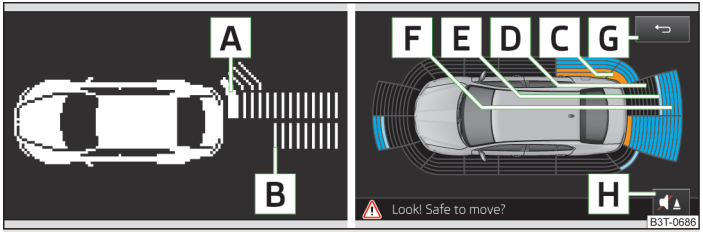


Fig. 137 **Illustrated examples: monochromatic display/colour display**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

For navigation systems and some factory-installed radios, the system is displayed on the screen.

Explanation of graphic

A An obstacle detected in the collision area. **Do not drive the vehicle!**
B An obstacle so far detected outside the collision area.

C An obstacle detected in the collision area. **Do not drive the vehicle!**
D An area without any obstacles or a free space between the bumper and an obstacle.
E An obstacle so far detected outside the collision area.
F An area behind the detected obstacle.
G Switching off the visual parking system.
H Switching the acoustic parking aid on/off.

Park assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Finding a parking space 152
Parking 152
Departing from a parallel parking space 153
Automatic brake assist 153
Information messages 154

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 149, *Parking aid* **must be read and observed.**

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system only operates if the ignition is switched on.

During the parking procedure the system only takes over the steering movements, the pedals continue to be operated by the driver.

When the system is activated, the warning light P lights up » Fig. 138 on page 152 - A.

The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.

Basis of the system function

› The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
› The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.
› The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
› the automatic turning of the front wheels when parking in, or manoeuvring out of the parking space.

WARNING

- The system does not exempt the driver from his/her responsibility for parking in and manoeuvring out of the parking space.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on parking in and manoeuvring out of the parking space. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.
- When parking in, and manoeuvring out of parking spaces, the system automatically executes quick steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- When parking or departing from a parking space on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice etc.), there may be deviations due to the conditions of the calculated road surface. We therefore recommend not using the system in such situations.

CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind or on the kerb, the system can guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, the surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences or powder snow cannot be detected by the system.
- The evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depend on the circumference of the wheels. The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.
- Under certain circumstances, the system may not function correctly, for example, if the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.

Finding a parking space

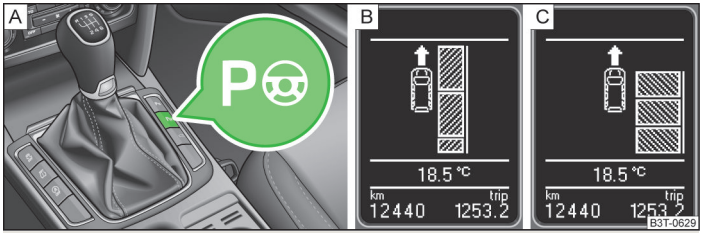


Fig. 138 **System button/displays in the instrument cluster display**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 151.

The search for a suitable parking space takes place while the display is switched off. If the display is not switched on using the P symbol button until the driver drives past the parking space, the system can assess and display this parking space.

Finding a parallel parking space

› Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
› Press the P » Fig. 138 symbol button **once**.

The following is shown in the information display of the information cluster » Fig. 138 - B.

Finding a perpendicular parking space

› Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
› Press the P » Fig. 138 symbol button **twice**.

The following is shown in the information display of the information cluster » Fig. 138 - C.

The search area for the parking space on the front passenger's side is automatically shown in the instrument cluster display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is shown in the instrument cluster display.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

To change the parking mode when searching for a parking space, press the P symbol button again.

Parking

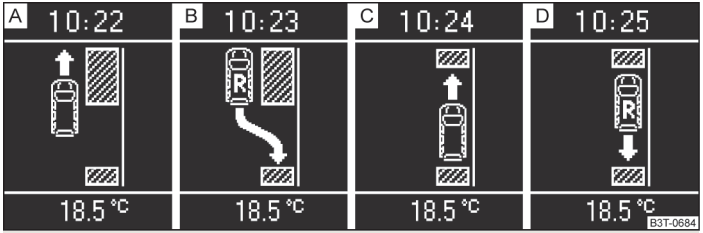


Fig. 139 **Displays in the instrument cluster display**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 151.

The time limit for the parking procedure with the help of the system is 6 minutes.

If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 139 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 139 - B.
› Stop and make sure that the vehicle does not move forward until the start of the parking procedure.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the information cluster display: **Steering interv. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

In the event that the parking procedure cannot be carried out in one go, the parking process is completed in further stages.

› If the forwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 139 - C, then select first gear or move the selector lever into position **D**.

› Wait until the steering wheel automatically turns into the required position and then carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 139 - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› Wait until the steering wheel automatically turns into the required position and then carefully reverse.

These steps can be repeated several times one after the other.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Steering interv. finished. Please take over steering!

Explanation of graphic

A Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
B Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
C Indication for selecting the forward gear.
D Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

Automatic termination

The system cancels the parking procedure if one of the following cases occurs:
› Speed of 7 km/h repeatedly exceeded during the parking procedure.
› Time limit of 6 minutes exceeded for the parking procedure.
› System button pressed.
› TCS system switched off.
› Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stops the steering wheel).
› Reverse gear disengaged or selector lever moved out of position **R** when reversing into the parking space.
› Selector lever moved into position **P**.
› There is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› Automatic braking for damage limitation.

If any of the above events occurs, the following warning message is displayed. » page 154.

Departing from a parallel parking space

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 151.

Manoeuvring out
› Press the P» Fig. 138 on page 152 symbol button **once**.
› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following is shown in the information cluster display: **Steering interv. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
› Follow the instructions of the system shown in the instrument cluster display.

As soon as the manoeuvring procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Steering interv. finished. Please take over steering!

Automatic termination

The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.
› Speed of 7 km/h exceeded during the departing procedure.
› System button pressed.
› TCS system switched off.
› Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stops the steering wheel).
› There is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› Automatic braking for damage limitation.

If any of the above events occurs, the following warning message is displayed. » page 154.

Automatic brake assist

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 151.

The system provides assistance to the driver with automatic brake assist. The automatic brake assist does not exempt the driver from his/her responsibility for the accelerator, brake and clutch.

Automatic braking for preventing cancellations caused by excessive speeds
Automatic brake support can be used in order to stop the speed from exceeding 7 km/h, thereby preventing the subsequent cancellation of the parking procedure. The parking procedure can be resumed after automatic braking.

Automatic braking takes place only once per parking procedure.

Automatic braking for damage limitation
The system detects an imminent collision based on the driving speed and the distance from the obstacle, automatic brake support is initiated.

The system function is ended after this automatic brake assist for damage limitation.

WARNING

- Automatic brake assist only works as an element of the assist function. The driver must always be ready to brake the vehicle him/herself.
- Automatic brake assist is ended after around 1.5 seconds. Depress the braking pedal so that the vehicle does not start moving by itself.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 151.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

Park Assist: Speed too high.

Reduce speed to under 40 km/h (parallel parking) or under 20 km/h (bay parking). This message is only displayed at speeds up to around 50 km/h. When the speed exceeds 50 km/h, reactivate the system using the P button.

Speed too high. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the speed was exceeded. Park with a max. speed of 7 km/h.

Driver steering intervention: Please take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist finished. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated. Activate the TCS.

ASR deactivated. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist finished.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

Time limit exceeded. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist finished. System currently not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist finished. Please take over steering!

Assume control of the steering. Complete the parking procedure without using the system.

ASR intervention. Please take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

PARK ASSIST Turn on turn signal and select reverse gear

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

Please take over steering and drive on.

The manoeuvring procedure out of a parallel parking space has ended. Assume control of the steering.

Automatic space departure not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

Park Assist: Brake interv. Speed too high.

The driving speed during the parking procedure was too high - automatic brake assist is initiated.

Cruise control system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating 155
Storing and maintaining speed 155
Changing the stored speed 156
Temporarily deactivating 156

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is switched on.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) – risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.

CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. In such cases, select a lower gear or brake the vehicle using the footbrake.
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when first gear or reverse gear is selected (vehicles with manual transmission).
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when the selector lever is in positions **P** , **N** or **R** (vehicles with automatic transmission).
- The cruise control system may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the maximum permissible engine speed is exceeded, etc.

Activating/deactivating

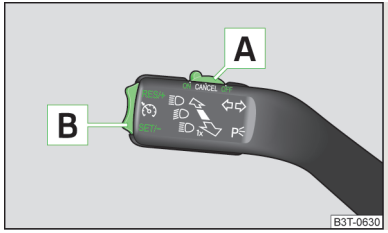


Fig. 140
Operating lever: Rocker switch and switch of the cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 155.

Activating

› Turn the switch A » Fig. 140 into the **ON** position.

Deactivating

› Turn the switch A » Fig. 140 into the **OFF** position.

Storing and maintaining speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 155.

› Activate the cruise control system » page 155.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Push the rocker button B into the **SET** » Fig. 140 on page 155 position.

After you have released the rocker button B out of the position **SET**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing the stored speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 155.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button B

› Push the rocker button B into the **RES** » Fig. 140 on page 155 position.

The speed will increase continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **RES** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed using the rocker button B

The stored speed can be **reduced** by pushing the rocker button B into the **SET** » Fig. 140 on page 155 position.

The speed will decrease continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

If the rocker button is released at a speed of less than 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. Once the speed of the vehicle has increased to more than 25 km/h, the speed must then be stored again by pushing the rocker button B into the **SET** position.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Decreasing the speed with the brake pedal

The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system » page 156.

Temporarily deactivating

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 155.

The cruise control system can be **temporarily deactivated** by pushing the switch A » Fig. 140 on page 155into the spring-mounted **CANCEL** position or by depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly push the rocker button B into the **RES** position in order to **resume** the stored speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Starting/shutting down the engine 157
System operating conditions 157
Manually activating/deactivating the system 158
Information messages 158

The START-STOP system helps you to save fuel while at the same time reducing harmful exhaust emissions and CO_2 emissions.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

In the start-stop mode, the engine automatically switches to the vehicle's idle phase, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. The engine restarts automatically where necessary.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer is coupled.

! WARNING

- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.

! CAUTION

Always deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 145.

Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode on vehicles with manual transmission or automatic transmission (when the selector lever in position **P**), the engine must be started manually » page 131.
- After manually starting the engine on vehicles with manual transmission, automatic engine shut down is not possible until the vehicle has travelled the required minimum distance for START-STOP mode.
- If, on vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever positions **D**, **S** or **N** are selected after driving in reverse, the vehicle will first need to achieve a speed of over 10 km/h before automatic engine shut down can take place again.
- Changes to the outdoor temperature can have an effect on the internal temperature of the vehicle battery even after several hours. If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If Climatronic is running in automatic mode, the engine may not switch off automatically under certain conditions.

Starting/shutting down the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

Vehicles with manual transmission

› Stop the vehicle (where necessary, apply the handbrake).
› Put the gear stick into Neutral.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shut down (STOP phase) takes place. The warning symbol Ⓐ appears in the instrument cluster display.

› Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again (START phase). The warning symbol Ⓐ goes out.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shut down takes place. The warning symbol Ⓐ appears in the instrument cluster display.

› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again. The warning symbol Ⓐ goes out.

Further information on automatic transmission

Engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D**, **S** and **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P**, the engine remains shut down even after you release the brake pedal. Start the engine by pressing the gas pedal or by choosing a different gear and releasing the brake pedal.

If the selector lever is moved into position **R** during the **STOP phase**, the engine will re-start.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System operating conditions

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

The START-STOP system is very complex. Some of the procedures are hard to check without servicing.

No engine shut down is carried out

Before each STOP phase, the system checks whether certain conditions have been met. No engine shut down takes place in the following situations.

› The engine has not reached the minimum temperature for the START STOP mode.
› The temperature inside the vehicle has not reached the temperature set in the air-conditioning system.
› The external temperature is very low/high.
› The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
› The parking aid/Park Assist is switched on.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
› The stationary vehicle is on a steep slope or a steep downhill section.
› The idling speed is too high.
› The steering angle is too large (manoeuvring).
› The selector lever position **R** is selected (e.g. when parking).

The warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster display.

The automatic start procedure takes place again
During the STOP phase, the engine fires up without any active driver intervention, e.g. in the following situations.

- The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- The difference between the temperature setting of the air-conditioning system and the inside temperature is too large.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The brake pedal was pressed several times (the pressure in the braking system is too low).
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.

Manually activating/deactivating the system



Fig. 141
Button for the START-STOP system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

Activation/deactivation
› Press the symbol button » Fig. 141.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the indicator light in the button lights up.

Note

If the system is deactivated during the STOP phase, the automatic start procedure takes place.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 156.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

Start the engine manually!
START MANUALLY

The driver sees this message when the conditions for the automatic start procedure are not met during the STOP phase. The engine must be started manually » page 133.

Error: Start-Stop
ERROR START-STOP

Error in the START-STOP system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 159
Information messages 159

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The fatigue detection system is designed primarily for motorway driving.

Operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

The fatigue detection system advises the driver on the basis of information about the steering behaviour, to take a break from driving. The system recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km/h.

After the ignition has been switched on, the system evaluates the steering behaviour for 15 minutes. This baseline analysis is constantly compared with the current steering behaviour.

If the system detects deviations from normal steering behaviour due to possible fatigue of the driver, it recommends to take a break from driving.

The system deletes the stored baseline analysis if one of the following conditions is met.

› The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
› The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
› The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be activated/deactivated via the information display in the **Assistants** menu item » page 26.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 158.

The ♨ symbol will appear in the instrument cluster display for a few seconds, along with the following message:

Driver alert. Take a break!

An audible signal is also emitted.

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 160
Adjusting the ready position 161
Fitting the tow bar 161
Checking proper attachment 162
Removing the tow bar 162
Use and care 163

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal regulations for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **80 kg**.

WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- Do not use the tow bar if it is not correctly inserted and secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing device if it is damaged or if there are parts missing.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Never release the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

Take care when handling the tow bar so as to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

Description

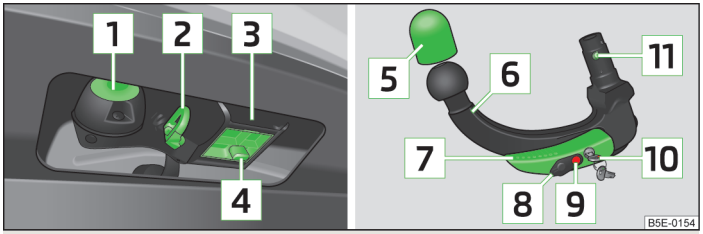


Fig. 142 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

The tow bar can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel compartment or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » page 222, *Car tool*.

Explanation of graphic

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eyelet
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Tow ball
7 Operating lever
8 Lock cap
9 Release pin
10 Key
11 Locking ball

Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

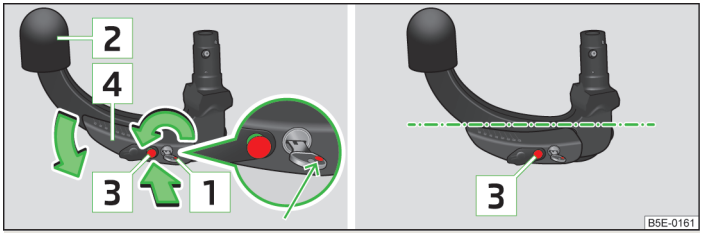


Fig. 143 **Setting the ready position/ready position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

Always adjust the ball head in the ready position before fitting.

› Turn the key 1 so that its red marking is visible » Fig. 143.
› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap 2.
› Press the release pin 3 in the direction of the arrow to the stop, and simultaneously push the lever 4 downwards in the direction of the arrow to the stop.

The lever remains locked in this position.

CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned to a different position.

Fitting the tow bar

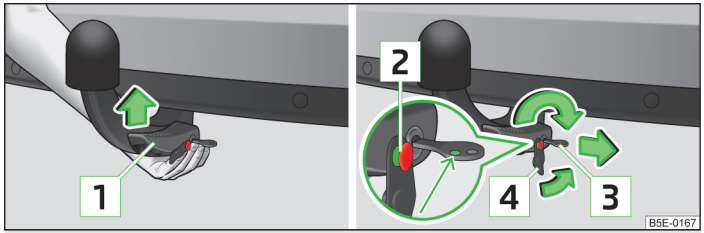


Fig. 144 **Insert the ball head/lock the lock, and put the lock cover on**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

› Pull cap 4 » Fig. 142 on page 160 downwards.
› Put the tow bar in the ready position » page 161.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 144 and insert into the mounting recess until you hear it click into place » !.

The lever 1 **automatically** turns upwards and the release pin 2 pops out (its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If the lever 1 does not turn automatically, or if the release pin 2 does not pop out, remove the tow bar from the mounting recess by turning the lever downwards as far as it can go. Clean the tapered surfaces on the tow bar and the mounting recess.

› Lock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key 3 by 180° to the right (see green marking 3 is visible) and remove the key in the direction of the arrow.
› Insert the cap 4 onto the lock in the direction of the arrow » !.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 162.

WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the tow bar – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

CAUTION

- After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock of the operating lever – risk of dirt getting into the lock.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.
- After removing the ball head, always place the cap on the mounting recess.

Checking proper attachment

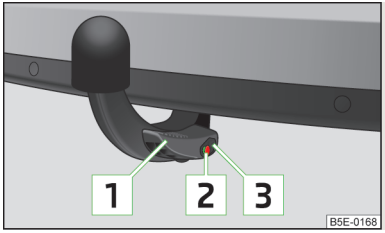


Fig. 145
Check that the tow bar is attached properly

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

Check that the tow bar is fitted properly before each use.

Check the following points.

✓ The lever 1 is right at the top » Fig. 145.
✓ The release pin 2 is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
✓ The key is removed.
✓ The cap 3 is on the lock of the operating lever.
✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".

WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the tow bar has been properly locked!

Removing the tow bar

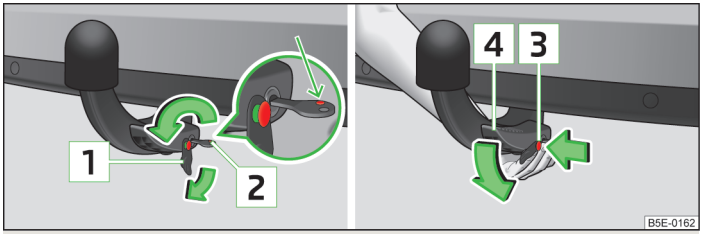


Fig. 146 **Unlock the operating lever of the ball head/removing the ball head**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

› Remove the cap 1 » Fig. 146 from the lock on the tow bar in the direction of the arrow.
› Unlock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key 2 180° to the left so that the red marking becomes visible.
› Grasp the ball head from underneath.
› Press the release pin 3 in the direction of the arrow to the stop, and simultaneously push the lever 4 downwards in the direction of the arrow to the stop.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the tow bar latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Place the cap 4 » Fig. 142 on page 160 onto the mounting recess.

WARNING

Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause boot damage on sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

CAUTION

▪ If the lever is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The tow bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
▪ Stow the ball head in the ready position with the key inserted in the box. When doing so, make the side opposite to the inserted key face downwards – there is a risk of damaging the key.
▪ Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

Note

▪ We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
▪ Clean any dirt from the tow bar before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

Close the mounting recess with the cover to prevent any dirt from getting in.

Always check the tow bar before hitching a trailer. Apply suitable grease where necessary.

Use the protective cover when stowing away the tow bar, in order to stop the boot from getting dirty.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

CAUTION

Apply grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer 163
Driving with a trailer 164
Trailer stabilisation 165
Anti-theft alarm system 165

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 163.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load
Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 215, *Service life of tyres*.

Trailer load
The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 245, *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – risk of accident and serious injury.
- Slipping loads can significantly impair the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – risk of accident and serious injury.

Driving with a trailer

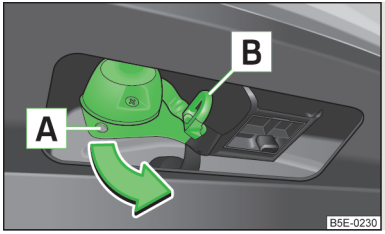


Fig. 147
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 163.

› Before attaching the trailer to the vehicle, take hold of the 13-pin power socket in the area A » Fig. 147 and swivel it out in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the protective cover 5 5 » Fig. 142 on page 160 upwards before connecting the trailer to the vehicle.

Safety eyelet
The purpose of the safety eyelet B » Fig. 147 is to attach the breakaway cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eyelet, it must **sag** freely against the vehicle in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse etc.).

Exterior mirrors
You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 48, *Parking and low beam lights*.

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 208, *Checking the coolant level*.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 15, *Coolant temperature/coolant level*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING

- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting the power socket, check that the rear lights on the trailer are working correctly.
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dash panel » page 238.
- Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eyelet can result in mechanical wear on the surface protection of the eyelet. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eyelet and does not constitute a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.

Trailer stabilisation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 163.

The trailer stabilisation is an extension of the stabilisation control that works in conjunction with the counter-steering assistance to reduce the amount the trailer "sways".

After turning on the ignition, the ESC indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the ABS indicator light.

Function requirements for trailer stabilisation.

✓ The coupling device was factory-fitted or purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.
✓ The ESC is active. (Warning lights or do **not** illuminate in the instrument cluster).
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.
✓ The trailer has a rigid drawbar.

WARNING

The increased safety offered by the trailer stabilisation must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise.

CAUTION

- The trailer stabilisation need not be able to correctly detect all of driving situations.
- Light trailers that sway are not always detected and therefore stabilised accordingly by the trailer stabilisation.
- Release the pressure on the accelerator pedal if the system is being regulated.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.

Note

The trailer stabilisation works for both braked and unbraked trailers.

Anti-theft alarm system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 163.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 35.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Safety equipment ____ 167
Before setting off ____ 167
What influences the driving safety? ____ 168

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Safety equipment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- Belt force limiter for front and outer rear seats.
- Belt tensioner for front and outer rear seats.
- Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- Driver's knee airbag.
- Front side airbags.
- Rear side airbags.
- Head airbags.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- Head restraints adjustable for height.
- Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Before setting off

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Secure all items of luggage » page 82, *Boot*.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Adjust the mirrors, the front seat and head restraint to your body size.
- Advise your passengers to adjust the head restraints to their body size.
- Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 184, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position » page 168, *Correct seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.
- Correctly fasten the seat belt. Also inform passengers to fasten the seat belt correctly » page 171.

What influences the driving safety?

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 167.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

› Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
› Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
› Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
› Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
› Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Correct seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver ____ 169
Correct seated position for the front passenger ____ 169
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats ____ 169
Examples of incorrect seated positions ____ 169

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct seated position.
▪ The front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
▪ If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
▪ If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
▪ The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions:
▪ Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
▪ Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.
▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven - never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the driver

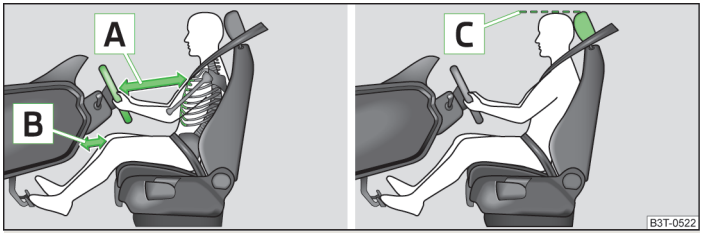


Fig. 148 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct head restraint position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 168.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

› Position the steering wheel so that there is a gap of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the chest A » Fig. 148, and that the distance between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag is at least 10 cm B.
› Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 171.

Manual driver seat adjustment » page 66.

Electrical driver seat adjustment » page 66.

Correct seated position for the front passenger

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 168.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

› Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 148 on page 169.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 171.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 181, *Deactivating airbags*.

Manual front passenger adjustment » page 66.

Electrical front passenger seat adjustment » page 66.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 168.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

› Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head C » Fig. 148 on page 169.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 171.
› Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 184, *Transporting children safely*.

Examples of incorrect seated positions

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 168.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.
- Do not stand up.
- Do not stand on the seats.
- Do not kneel on the seats.
- Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not lie on the rear seats.
- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your feet out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction



Fig. 149
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision ____ 172
Fastening and unfastening seat belts ____ 173
Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats ____ 174

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 149.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 184.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 173, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 168, *Correct seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct routing of the seat belt.
- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper use of the seat belts.
- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 72.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for proper maintenance of the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 196.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

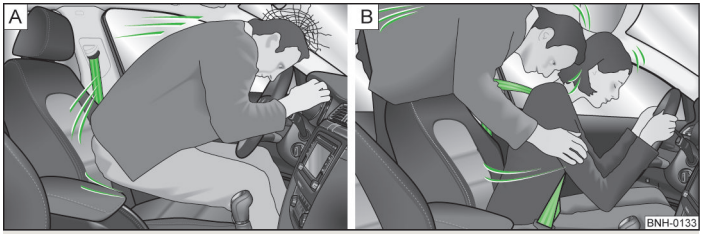


Fig. 150 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear passenger without a fastened seat belt**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

Motion energy, so-called kinetic energy, is produced as soon as the vehicle is moving, both for the vehicle and its occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen » Fig. 150 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front » Fig. 150 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

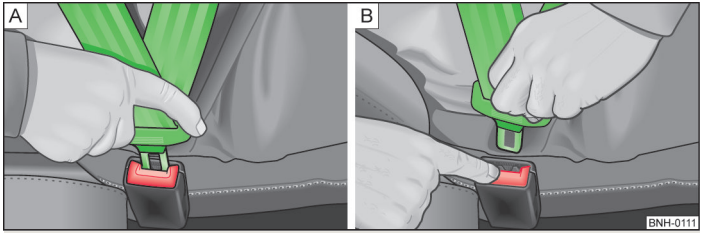


Fig. 151 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

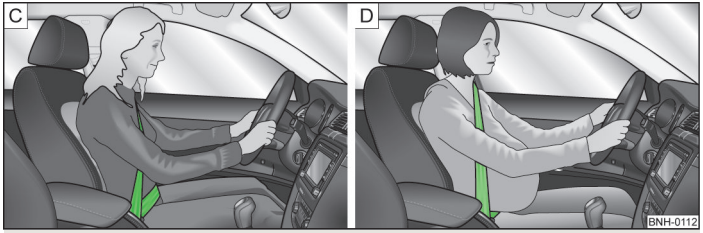


Fig. 152 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint before fastening the seat belt » page 168.
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat until audibly it clicks into place » Fig. 151 - A.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 152 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

On expectant mothers, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 152 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 151 - B, the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats

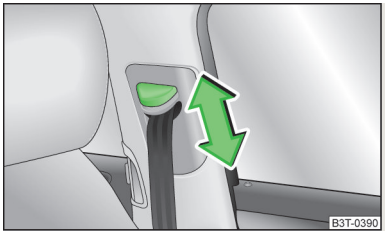


Fig. 153
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 153.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels 174
Belt tensioners 174

Inertia reels

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 174.

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 174.

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

! WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 176
Airbag deployment 176

WARNING

▪ An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.
▪ The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
▪ To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 168, *Correct seated position*.
▪ If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
▪ If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
▪ No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
▪ Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
▪ Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
▪ It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
▪ The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 176.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 19.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.
› Electronic control unit.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 178.
› Driver's knee airbag » page 179.
› Side airbags » page 179.
› Head airbags » page 180.
› Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 19.
› Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 182.
› Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 182.

Note

▪ The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
▪ If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
▪ When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 176.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
› Driver's front airbag.
› Front passenger airbag.
› Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
› Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
› the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
› the hazard warning light is switched on;
› all the doors are unlocked;
› the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags 178
Driver's knee airbag 179
Side airbags 179
Head airbags 180

Front airbags

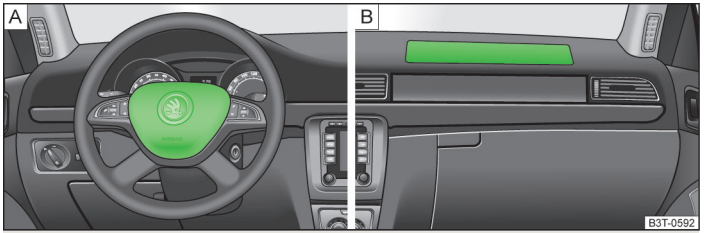


Fig. 154 **Driver's airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel**

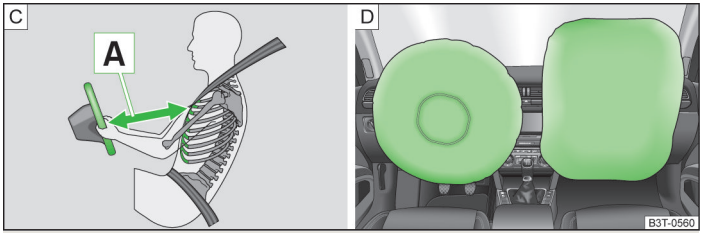


Fig. 155 **Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 177.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 154 - A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the stowage compartment B - » Fig. 154.

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 155 - D. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Correct seated position
- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 155. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children
- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 181, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General
- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Driver's knee airbag

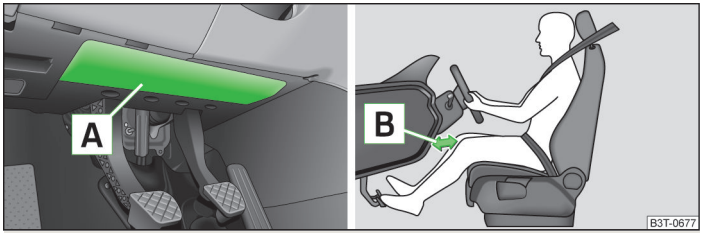


Fig. 156 **Driver's knee airbag below the steering column**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 177.

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag A is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 156.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10cm between the legs B and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 156. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Side airbags

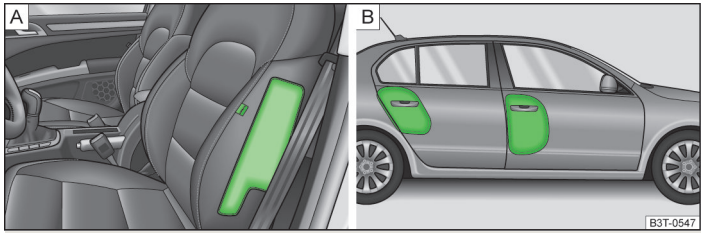


Fig. 157 **Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat / gas-filled side airbags**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 177.

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 157 - A.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest.

When the side airbags » Fig. 157 - B are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct seated position.
- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 185, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 184, *Child seat*.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.
- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Head airbags

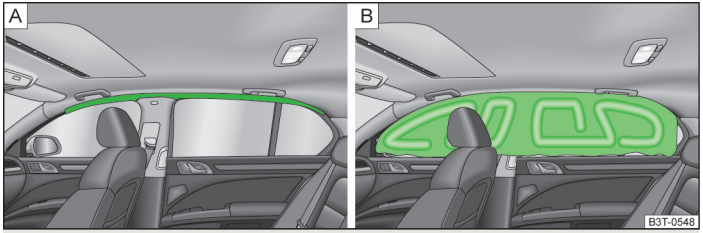


Fig. 158 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 177.

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » Fig. 158 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar » Fig. 158 - B.

Any impact of the head against parts of the interior or objects outside of the car, is cushioned by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

WARNING

General
- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 196.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must no other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the passenger and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.
- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags 181
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 182

Deactivating airbags

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 181.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.
- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 184, *Transporting children safely*.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.

› If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
› If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 182, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system
The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment
› The warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment
› The warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
› Warning light OFF 3 » Fig. 159 on page 182 lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Note

▪ The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
▪ A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

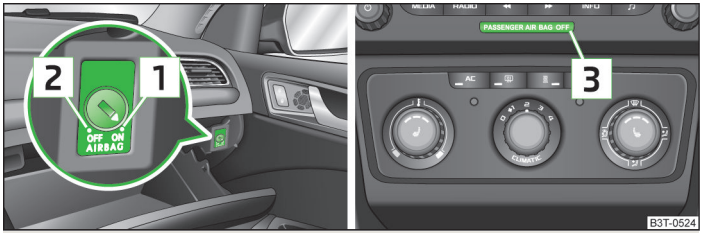


Fig. 159 **Key switch for front passenger airbag/warning light for front passenger airbag activation/deactivation**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 181.

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 2 » Fig. 159 **OFF**.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that warning light OFF 3 **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the text lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 1 » Fig. 159 **ON**.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that warning light OFF 3 **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** lights up after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning light OFF is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat ____ 185
Child safety and side airbag ____ 185
Classification of child seats ____ 186
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt ____ 186

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe - Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 185, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a backwards-facing child restraint system on a seat that is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause the child severe injury or even death.

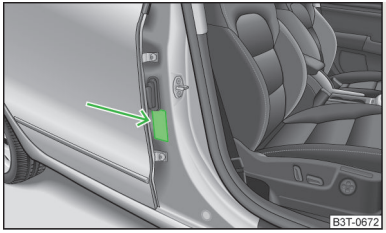


Fig. 160
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

› The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 181, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the B column on the front passenger side » Fig. 160. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. In some countries, the sticker is affixed to the front passenger sun visor.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Child safety and side airbag

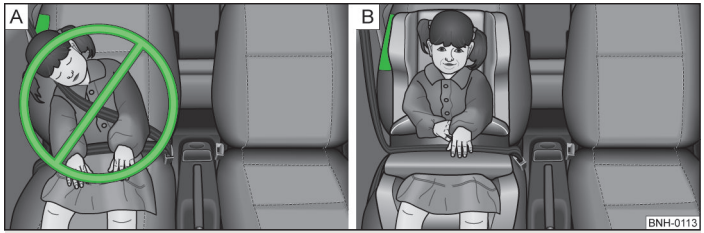


Fig. 161 **Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/child properly protected by child seat**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 161 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag so that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 161 - B.

WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0 +	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system 187
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system 187
Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system 188

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system



Fig. 162
Rear seat: ISOFIX

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 186.

There are two locking eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place.

On the rear outside seats, the fixing eyes are located below the upholstery. The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 162.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the anchor eyelets intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk to life.

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 186.

Overview of the usability of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size category of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 to 10 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
0+ to 13 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
	D			
	C			

Group	Size category of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with the ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suited for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system

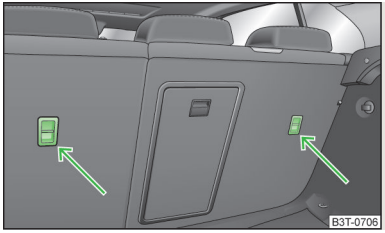


Fig. 163
Rear seat: TOP TETHER

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 186.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 163.

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle

Washing your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand ____ 189
Automatic car wash systems ____ 189
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner ____ 190

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends on factors such as:
› Frequency of use.
› Parking situation (garage, under trees etc.).
› Season.
› Weather conditions.
› Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 189.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) - Risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 189.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then de-greased.

WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 189.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 192 .

Taking care of your vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork 191
Plastic parts 191
Rubber seals 191
Chrome parts 192
Decorative films 192
De-icing windows and exterior mirrors 192
Headlight lenses 192
Door lock cylinders 193
Cavity protection 193
Wheels 193
Underbody protection 193

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays**.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork
A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing
Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products **whatsoever**.

CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

De-icing windows and exterior mirrors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

CAUTION

▪ The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
▪ Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
▪ Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
▪ When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.
▪ Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- **Never** wipe headlights with a dry cloth.
- Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Cavity protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

Wheel rims
Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels
After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Underbody protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 190.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Taking care of the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather 194
Artificial leather, fabric and Alcantara® 195
Seat covers 195
Seat belts 196

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

The leather should be cleaned on a regular basis depending on the amount of wear-and-tear.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » !.

Clean severely soiled areas with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather, fabric and Alcantara®

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a specific cleaning agent to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface.

If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat covers from the direct rays of the sun to prevent fading.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

- Do not use any leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat covers.
- For Alcantara® seat covers do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners, or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

Electrically heated seats
Do not clean the covers **by moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Seat belts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 194.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).

WARNING (Continued)

- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Modifications, repairs and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ŠKODA Service Partners 197
Spoiler 197
Airbags 198

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 197 before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.

WARNING (Continued)

- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.

WARNING

- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.

ŠKODA Service Partners

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 196.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Spoiler

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 196.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a **spoiler** on the front bumper in combination with the **spoiler** on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.

Airbags

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 196.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling ____ 199
Unleaded petrol ____ 200
Diesel fuel ____ 200

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 164 on page 199 - B.

WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!

Refuelling

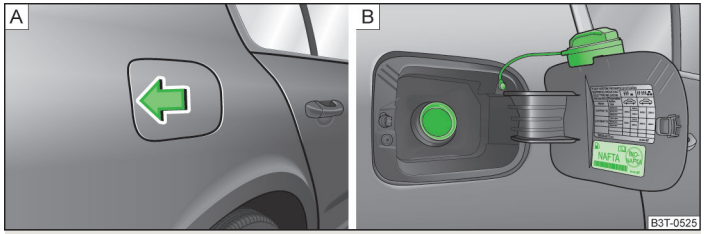


Fig. 164 **Open fuel filler flap/fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 199.

Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation) » page 104.

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 164 - A.
› Unscrew the filler cap by turning it in a counterclockwise direction and place the cap onto the top of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 164 - B.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump.
› Insert the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and screw it in a clockwise direction until it clicks into place.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

CAUTION

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **60 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **10.5 litres**.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 199.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** complying with the **EN 228** standard (in Germany also **DIN 51626-1** or **E10** for unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **95** RON and **91** RON or **DIN 51626-2** or **E5** for unleaded petrol with an octane rating **95** RON and **98** RON).

Prescribed fuel - unleaded fuel 95/91 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol **91** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating **91** RON if petrol with the octane rating **95** RON is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Unleaded petrol with higher octane number
Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Prescribed fuel - unleaded fuel 98/95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating **91** RON of unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Fuel additives
Only use unleaded petrol, which complies with the standard EN 228 (in Germany: standard DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 91 RON or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 98 RON), as these meet all of the requirements for fault-free engine operation. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used.

CAUTION

- All ŠKODA vehicles with petrol engines must only be operated with unleaded petrol. Just filling the tank with leaded petrol once will damage the exhaust system!
- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. Do not use any LRP (lead replacement petrol) fuels with metal constituents – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.
- Do not use any fuels with metal constituents – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.
- The use of unsuitable fuel additives can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Diesel fuel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 199.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel**, which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria, **GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004** in Russia).

All diesel engines can be operated with diesel fuel with a **maximum** content of 7 % bio-fuel **(B7)**, which complies with the standard **DIN 52638** in Germany (in Austria **C 1590**, in France **EN 590**).

For the Indian market, your vehicle can run only on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter - Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel
The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

Fuel additives
Fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar products) must not be added to the diesel fuel.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- Damage caused by using diesel fuel which does not comply with the standards is excluded from the warranty.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of biofuel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel (RME) can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Comply with the proscribed oil change intervals.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 203
Engine compartment overview 203
Radiator fan 203
Windscreen washer system 204

WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed before starting work in the engine compartment:
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position **P**.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed when working in the engine compartment.
- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always store the coolant additive securely in its original container, and in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not leave any items such as cloths or tools in the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed at all times when working in the engine compartment while the engine is running.

- Pay particular attention to rotating engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition system – risk to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system - particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed if work has to be carried out on the fuel or electrical systems.

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep fluids in their original containers and keep securely out of the reach of children!
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. Therefore, the lock must always be checked after closing the bonnet in order to ensure that it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!
- Never open the bonnet using the locking lever » Fig. 165 on page 203.

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the specials tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage as part of an inspection service.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the correct specifications can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet

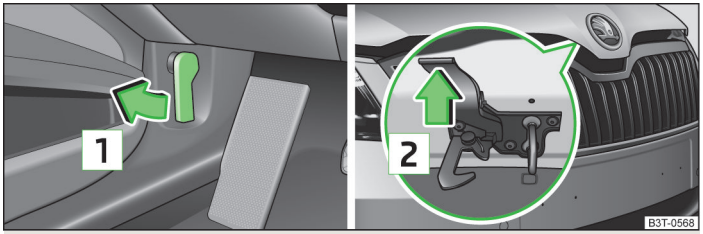


Fig. 165 **Bonnet release lever/release lever**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 201.

Opening

› Pull the release lever under the dash panel 1 » Fig. 165.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
› Grasp the bonnet and lift up until it is held open by the pressurised gas spring.

Closing

› Pull the bonnet down far enough to overcome the force of the pressurised gas spring.
› Close the bonnet from a height of approximately 20 cm with a slight swing

Check that the bonnet is closed properly.

Engine compartment overview

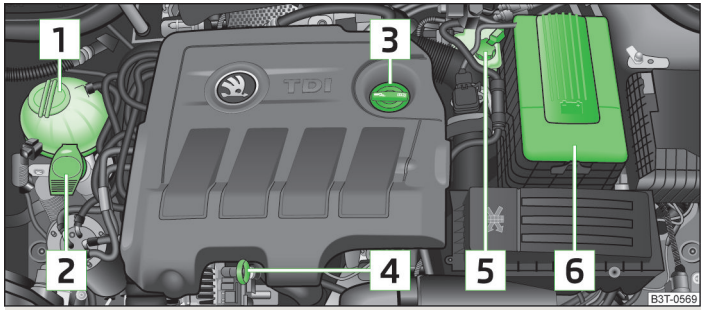


Fig. 166 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 201.

1	Coolant expansion reservoir	208
2	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	204
3	Engine oil filler opening	206
4	Engine oil dipstick	206
5	Brake fluid reservoir	209
6	Battery (below a cover)	209

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 201.

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

Windscreen washer system

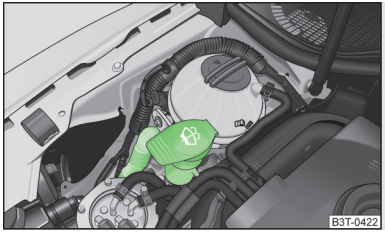


Fig. 167
Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 201.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment and contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the adaptive headlights.

The **capacity** of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 5.5 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with antifreeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

! CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity 205
Checking the oil level 206
Replenishing 206
Changing 206

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » page 206.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 201.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above level A » Fig. 168 on page 206, do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specifications and capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 204.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	3.6
1.8 ltr/112 kW TSI 1.8 ltr/118 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.6
2.0 ltr./147 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.6
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	VW 504 00	5.5

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification	Filling level
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/125 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.6
1.8 ltr/112 kW TSI 1.8 ltr/118 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.6
2.0 ltr./147 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.6
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	VW 502 00	5.5

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification	Filling level
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/103 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3
2.0 ltr/125 kW TDI CR DPF	VW 507 00	4.3

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used until the next oil change:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN/API SM;
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

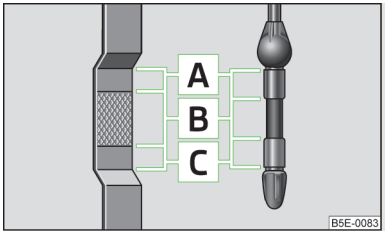


Fig. 168
Dipstick

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 204.

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine » Fig. 168.

Checking the oil level
Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.

› Switch off the engine.

Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.

› Open the bonnet.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range A
No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range B
Oil **can** be refilled. Afterwards, the oil level can lie in the range A.

Oil level within range C
The engine **must** be topped up with oil so that the oil level at least reaches the range B.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/ 1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range A, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster will indicate whether the oil level is too low » page 16, *Engine oil level*. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

! CAUTION

The oil level must not exceed the range A » Fig. 168 – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system.

Replenishing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 204.

› Check the oil level » page 206.
› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 166 on page 203.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 205.
› Check the oil level » page 206.
› Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 204.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator » page 11, *Service Interval Display*.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity 207
Checking the coolant level 208
Replenishing 208

The coolant consists of water with coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents lime formation.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40%.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the concentration of coolant additive can be increased up to a maximum of 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use the same antifreeze written on the antifreeze expansion tank » Fig. 169 on page 208.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 201.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- Other coolant additives that do not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 169 on page 208.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.

Capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 207.

Coolant capacity[1)]

Petrol engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	7.7
1.8 ltr/112 kW TSI 1.8 ltr/118 kW TSI	8.6
2.0 ltr./147 kW TSI	8.6
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	9.0

Diesel engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR	8.4

[1)] The coolant capacity is approximately 1 l greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

Checking the coolant level

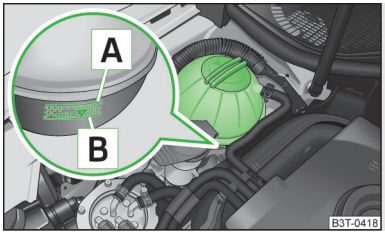


Fig. 169
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 207.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Inspecting the coolant level
› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle. » Fig. 169.

Coolant level within range A
No coolant may be added.

The level may also rise slightly above the A marking when the engine is hot.

Coolant level within range A and B
Coolant **may** be added.

The coolant level must lie between the A and B markings when the engine is cold.

Coolant level within range under B
Coolant **must** be added.

Top up the coolant level to between the A and B markings when the engine is cold.

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the indicator light lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 15, *Coolant temperature/coolant level*. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant
A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 207.

Only top up with new coolant.

› Switch off the engine.
› Allow the engine to cool.
› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the level 209
Changing 209

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 201.
- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking, - there is a risk of an accident. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.

Checking the level

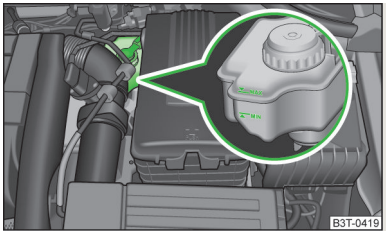


Fig. 170
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 208.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 170.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the indicator light lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 14, *Braking system*.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 208.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:
› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Battery cover 211
Checking the battery electrolyte level 211
Charging a vehicle battery 212
Disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery 213
Automatic load deactivation 213

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Importance
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.

Symbol	Importance
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the general applicable safety rules as well as the warning instructions outlined below.
- Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, slin cracks).
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with naked flames or lights.
- It is prohibited to smoke or carry out any activities that produce sparks.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all of the electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (–) on the battery.

CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first disconnect the battery's negative terminal (–), followed by the positive terminal (+).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first connect the battery's positive terminal (+), followed by the negative terminal (–). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.

▪ If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (–) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
▪ If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Battery cover

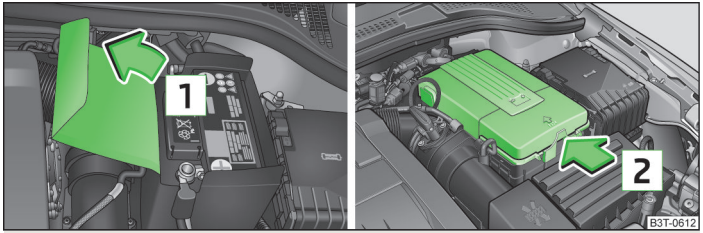


Fig. 171 **Engine compartment: Polyester cover of the vehicle battery/plastic cover of the vehicle battery**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 209.

The battery is located in the engine compartment in a polyester cover 1 » Fig. 171, in a plastic cover 2 » Fig. 171 or in the left side of the boot » Fig. 92 on page 87.

When working on the battery, the edge of the polyester battery cover 1 » Fig. 171 is inserted between the battery and the side wall of the battery cover.

Battery in the engine compartment

› Open the battery cover in the direction of the arrow 1 or press the interlock on the side of the battery cover in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 171, fold the cover up and remove.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Battery in the boot

The battery is located in the left side compartment with the symbol » Fig. 92 on page 87.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

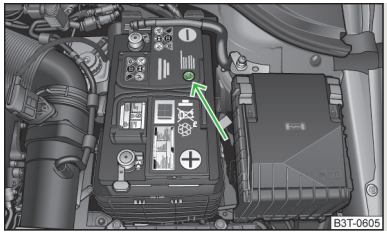


Fig. 172 **Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 209.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the so-called magic eye » Fig. 172, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time
At low temperatures, the vehicle battery only has part of the initial power output that it has at normal temperatures.

A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Note

The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Charging a vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 209.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
› Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer**.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, known as "**rapid charging**".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

Replacing the vehicle battery
When replacing a battery, the new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, amperage and be the same size. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 229, *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system*.

Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

Disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 209.

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free.

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 43
Panoramic sliding roof (operational faults)	» page 235
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» *User manual of the radio* or » *user manual of the navigation system*
Setting the clock	» page 12
Data in the multifunction display are deleted.	» page 22

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 209.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
› Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres 215
New tyres 216
Unidirectional tyres 217
Tyre pressure monitor 217
Spare wheel 218
Full wheel trim 219
Wheel bolts 219
Hubcaps 219
Wheel bolts 220

WARNING

- The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.
- Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

The following instructions for the use of tyres must be observed.
- For the first 500 km, new tyres do not yet provide optimum grip, and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on all four wheels.
- For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *load bearing capacity* for the tyres fitted – there is a risk of an accident.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *speed* for the tyres fitted – there is a risk of an accident.

WARNING (Continued)

- Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – risk of accident!
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction may impair the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding tyre damage and wear.
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the tyre inflation pressure.
- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Insufficient or excessive inflation pressure impairs handling – risk of accident!
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never apply grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to an insufficient tightening torque, the rims may come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- If the wheel bolts are handled incorrectly, the wheel may come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the spare wheel.
- Only use the spare wheel for as long as is necessary.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel attached.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » page 218, *Spare wheel*.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost valve caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

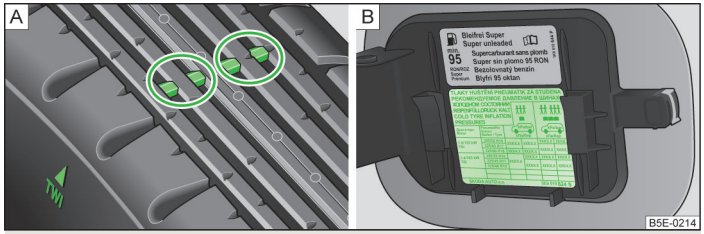


Fig. 173 **Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre sizes and tyre inflation pressures**

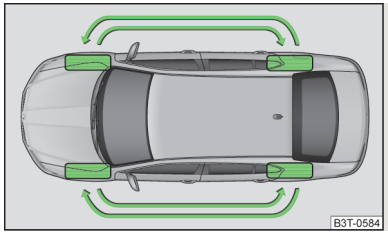


Fig. 174
Replacing wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

The service life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for **tyres** are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 173 – B.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres.

Tyre damage
Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Replacing wheels
If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend replacing the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 174. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you swap the tyres every 10,000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to ensure optimal service life for the tyres.

Storing tyres
Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are located multiple times depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre » Fig. 173 - A. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using summer or winter tyres older than 6 or 4 years old respectively.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible, replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings
205/55 R 16 94 V

What this means is:

205	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 173 on page 215 - B
55	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 173 on page 215 - B
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial » Fig. 173 on page 215 - B
16	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 173 on page 215 - B
94	Load index » !
V	Speed symbol » !

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the *inside*). e.g.

DOT ... 10 13...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2013.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

91 615 kg
92 630 kg
93 650 kg
94 670 kg

95 690 kg
97 730 kg
99 775 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

M 130 km/h
Q 160 km/h
R 170 km/h
S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol is listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:

✓ Increased driving stability.
✓ Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
✓ Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Tyre pressure monitor



Fig. 175
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

System settings

After changing the tyre inflation pressure, after changing one or several wheels, the position of a wheel on the vehicle (e.g. exchanging the wheels between the axles) or when the warning light lights up while driving, a **system configuration** must be carried out as follows:

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » page 215.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the symbol button » Fig. 175 for longer than 2 seconds.

If the warning light lights up and does not go out after the system configuration, this indicates a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light flashes, there is a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Tyre pressure indicator

The warning light lights up in any of the following cases.
› The tyre inflation pressure is low.
› The structure of the tyre is damaged.
› The vehicle is loaded on one side.
› The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
› Snow chains are mounted.
› The spare wheel is mounted.
› One wheel per axle was changed.

WARNING

- When the indicator light (!) illuminates, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light (!) may light up after a delay, or not at all.

CAUTION

- The tyre control display does therefore not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, as the system cannot detect an even loss of pressure.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10000 km or once a year.

Spare wheel

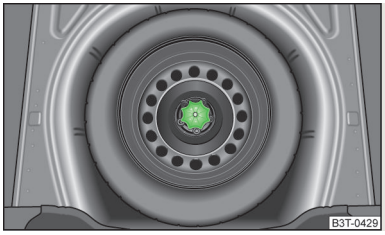


Fig. 176
Boot: Spare wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 176.

Take out the wheel
› Open the boot lid.
› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Remove the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the bolt » Fig. 176 in a counterclockwise direction.
› Take out the wheel.

Stow the wheel
› Stow the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well with the rim facing down.
› Screw the bolt » Fig. 176 in a clockwise direction until the wheel is safely secured.
› Replace the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Close the boot lid.

Fit a wheel in the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » !.

Temporary spare wheel
A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use this wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be particularly observant when driving.
› The inflation pressure for the temporary spare wheel is identical to the maximum inflation pressure for the standard tyres.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

WARNING

- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

CAUTION

Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Full wheel trim

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Pulling off

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

CAUTION

▪ Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. Avoid heavy impacts when the trim has not yet been inserted into the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
▪ Make sure that the anti-theft wheel bolt is mounted in the bore in the area near the valve » page 225, *Securing wheels against theft*.
▪ If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts

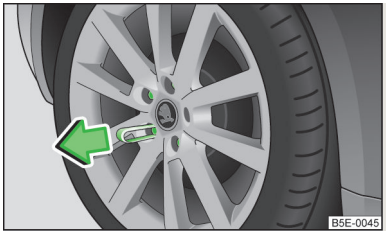


Fig. 177
Remove the cap

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Pulling off

› Push the extraction pliers » page 222 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap » Fig. 177.
› Remove the cap.

Install

› Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Hubcaps

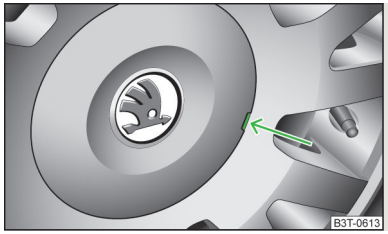


Fig. 178
Pull off the wheel trim cap on light alloy wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Pulling off

› Carefully remove the wheel trim cap using the wire clamp from the vehicle tool kit » Fig. 178.

Wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 214.

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels rims, e.g. light alloy wheel rims or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts with the correct length and dome shape. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres ____ 220
Snow chains ____ 220

Winter tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 220.

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions. Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of vehicles fitted with **wide tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

In order to achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the information display in the menu item **Winter tyres** » page 27.

For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 220.

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
7J x 16[a)]	45 mm	205/55
6J x 16[a)]	50 mm	205/55
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50

[a)] Not valid for vehicles with 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

Only use **fine-link snow chains**. They must not project more than 9 mm - including the chain lock.

Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle ____ 221
Fire extinguisher ____ 221
Car tool ____ 222

First aid kit and warning triangle



Fig. 179 **Stowage compartment for the first aid kit: Superb / Superb Combi**

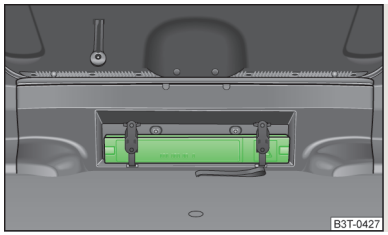


Fig. 180
Placing of the warning triangle

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 221.

First-aid box
The compartment for stowing the first-aid box is located in the right of the boot » Fig. 179.

Warning triangle
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 180.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Fire extinguisher

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 221.

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps in a holder under the driver seat.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Car tool

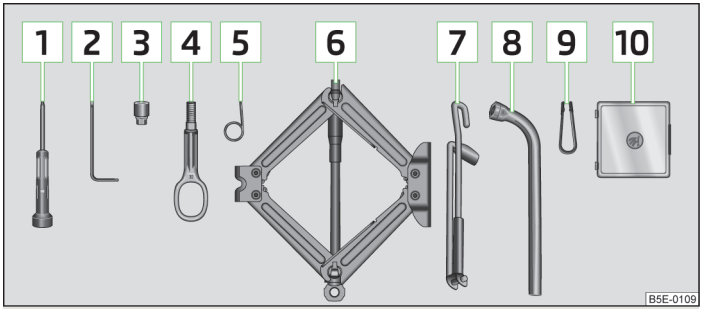


Fig. 181 **Vehicle tool kit**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 221.

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (if included in the vehicle) » Fig. 181.

1 Screwdriver
2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Car jack
7 Crank for the jack
8 Wheel wrench
9 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
10 Replacement bulb set

Screw the car jack back into its initial position after use in order to store it back in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances use it to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preliminary work 223
Changing a wheel 223
Follow-up work 224
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts 224
Raising the vehicle 225
Securing wheels against theft 225

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- The following instructions must be followed if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres or rims that differ from the factory-fitted ones » page 216, *New tyres*.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for lifting the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are fastened too tightly, this can cause damage to the anti-theft wheel bolt and the adapter.

Note

- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preliminary work

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

› **Let all of the occupants get out**. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine.
› Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› If a trailer is connected, uncouple it.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 222 and the **spare wheel** » page 218 from the boot.

Changing a wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

› Remove the full wheel trim » page 219 or caps » page 219.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » page 224.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 225.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Alternately tighten wheel bolts opposite (diagonally) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last » page 224.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

WARNING

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 214.

Follow-up work

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special screw » page 218.
› Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
› Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

WARNING

- If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

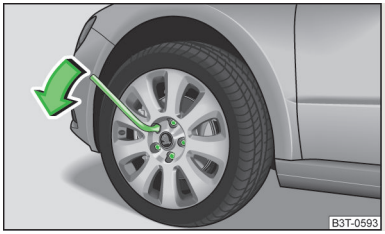


Fig. 182
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

Loosening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop[1)].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 182.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop[1)].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 182 until it is tight.

WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) provided that the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come off and fall down – risk of injury!

Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foodt**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

[1)] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 225.

Raising the vehicle

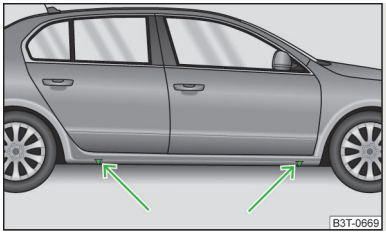


Fig. 183
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

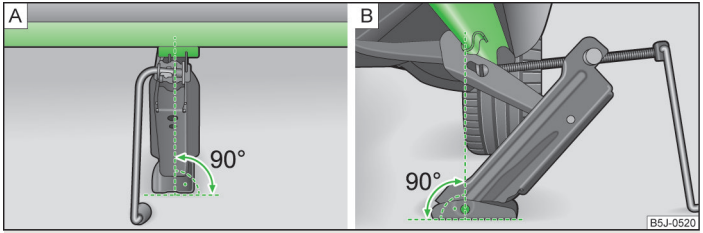


Fig. 184 **Attach lifting jack**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

Position the car jack below the jacking point that is closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 183. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

› Insert the crank into the mount on the car jack » page 222.
› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw is positioned below the vertical web of the lower sill.
› Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the web » Fig. 184 - B.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its entire surface resting on level ground and ensure that the lever is located in a vertical position to the area where the claw grasps the web » Fig. 184 - A.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

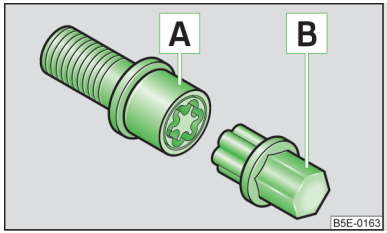


Fig. 185
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 222, *Car tool*.

› Insert the adapter B » Fig. 185 with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the safety wheel bolt A until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.

Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Original Parts if necessary.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit ____ 226
Preparations for using the breakdown kit ____ 227
Sealing and inflating the tyre ____ 227
Check after 10 minutes' driving ____ 228

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately.

Foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, **are not to be removed from the tyre**!

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

› There is damage to the rim.
› The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
› The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
› There is damage to the tyre wall.
› Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
› If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Breakdown kit

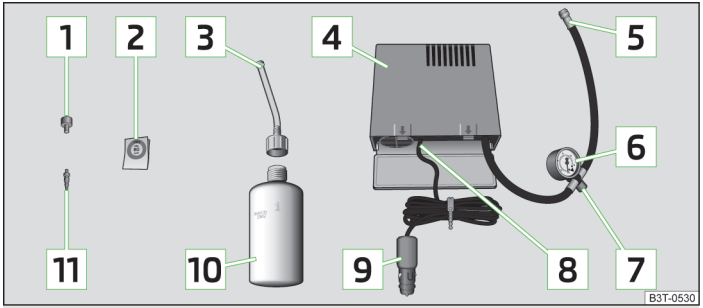


Fig. 186 **Components of the breakdown kit**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 226.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit

1 Valve remover
2 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Tyre inflation hose
6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
7 Air release valve
8 ON and OFF switch
9 12 volt cable connector
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 1 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core 11.

Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 226.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

› Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
› If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
› **Let all of the occupants get out**. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever on the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 226.
› If a trailer is connected, uncouple it.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
› Stick the sticker 2 » Fig. 186 on page 226 on the dash panel in view of the driver.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 1 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 226.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflator bottle 10 » Fig. 186 on page 226 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 1.

Inflating

› Screw the tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 186 on page 226 of the air compressor firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Check that the air release valve 7 is closed.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 9 into 12 Volt socket » page 76, *Cigarette lighter*.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 8.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 228.

WARNING

- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of injury.
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials – there is a risk of fire.
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – there is a risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 226.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.
› Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle 229
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system 229
Jump-starting vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot 229

WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – there is a risk of explosion.
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 201.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit.
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – there is a risk of caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, lit cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – there is a risk of explosion.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

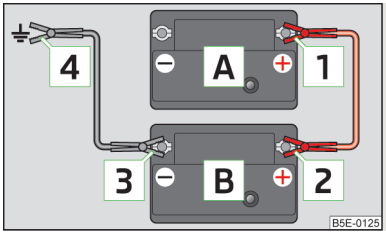


Fig. 187
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 187.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

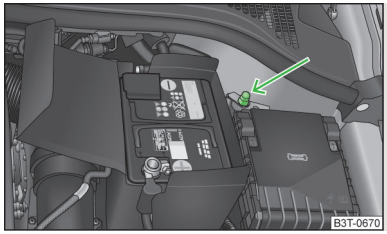


Fig. 188
Engine compartment: Earth

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable must only be connected to the engine earthing point » Fig. 188.

Jump-starting vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot

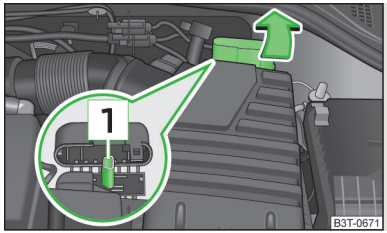


Fig. 189
Detail of the engine compartment: Jump-starting point

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 228.

On vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot, the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power can only be connected to the jump-starting point in the engine compartment of the vehicle being started by means of a jump-start cable » Fig. 189!

› Open the protective cap of the jump-starting point in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 189.

› Connect the positive terminal of the battery supplying the power with the jump-starting point.
› Attach the negative terminal of the battery supplying the power to a solid metal part firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.
› Start the engine.
› After starting the engine, close the protective cap of the jump-starting point.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye 231
Rear towing eye 231
Vehicles with a towing device 231

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

CAUTION

▪ Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 228, *Jump-starting*.
▪ If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
▪ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
▪ To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
▪ While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
▪ Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 231, *Front towing eye* or » page 231, *Rear towing eye* to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 160.
▪ The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

Note

▪ We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
▪ Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
▪ When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.

Front towing eye

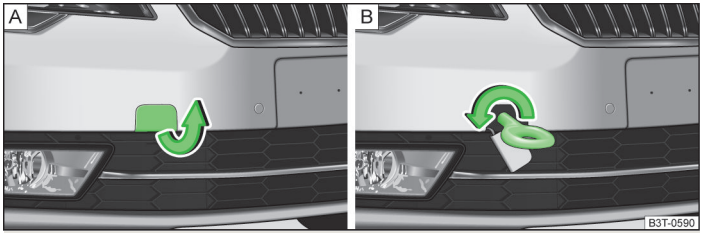


Fig. 190 **Front bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 230.

› Remove the cap from the front bumper » Fig. 190 - A.
› Screw in the towing eye by turning to the left up to the stop » Fig. 190 - B and tighten as much as possible. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, put the cap on and press into place. The cap must engage firmly.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

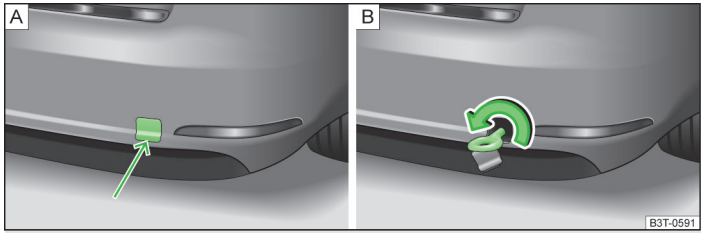


Fig. 191 **Rear bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 230.

› Press onto the bottom part of the cap in the rear bumper » Fig. 191 - A and remove it.
› Screw in the towing eye by turning to the left up to the stop » Fig. 191 - B and tighten as much as possible. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, put the cap on and press into place. The cap must engage firmly.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap » page 231, *Vehicles with a towing device*.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a towing device

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 230.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 160, *Towing device*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Radio remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key ____ 232
Synchronising the remote control ____ 233
Replace the battery in the remote control of the heater (heater) ____ 233

CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- When replacing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

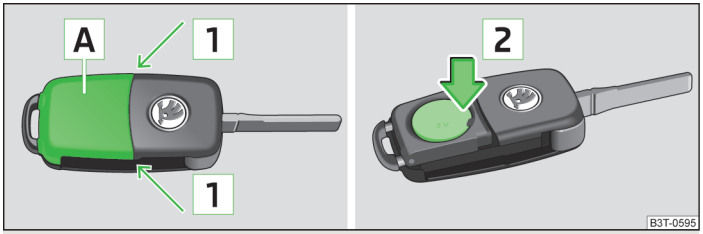


Fig. 192 **Remove cover/take out battery**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 232.

The battery is located under a cover A » Fig. 192.

We recommend having the key batteries replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows 1.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

Note

- The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 233.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 232.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key was replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Replace the battery in the remote control of the heater (heater)

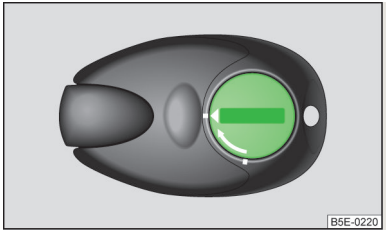


Fig. 193
Radio remote control: Battery cover

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 232.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 193.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
› Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
› Replace the battery.
› Return the battery cover.
› Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door 233
Locking a door 234
Unlocking the boot lid 234
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 234

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

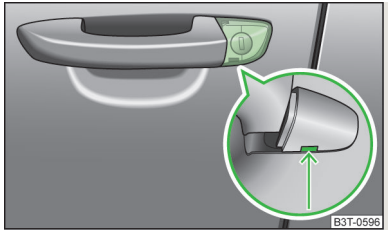


Fig. 194
Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 233.

› Pull on the handle.
› Push the vehicle key into the recess on the bottom side of the cover in the region of the arrow and fold it upwards » Fig. 194.
› Insert the vehicle key (the buttons facing upward) into the locking cylinder and lock/unlock the vehicle.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking a door

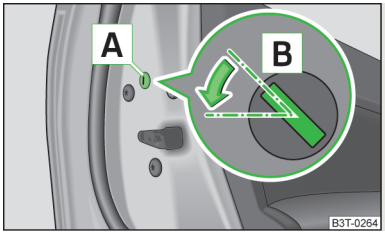


Fig. 195
Rear door: Emergency locking

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 233.

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the panel A » Fig. 195.
› Insert the key into the slot B and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
› Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it cannot be opened from the outside. The door is unlocked by pulling on the door opening lever and is then opened from the outside.

Unlocking the boot lid

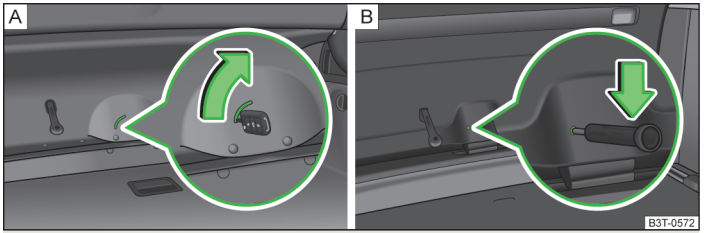


Fig. 196 **Emergency unlocking: Superb / Superb Combi**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 233.

Unlocking (Superb)
› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 72, *Seat backrests*.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel as far as the stop » Fig. 196 - A.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the boot lid.

Unlocking (Superb Combi)
› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 72, *Seat backrests*.
› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening of the trim as far as it goes » Fig. 196 - B.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

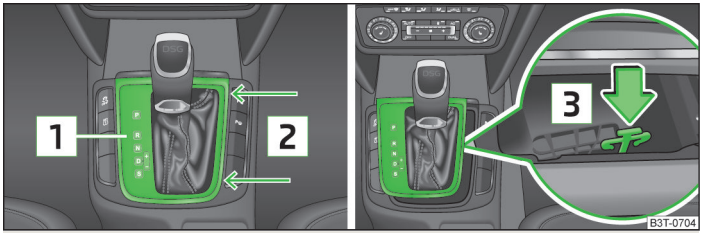


Fig. 197 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 233.

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Grasp the cover 1 in the area of arrow 2 » Fig. 197 and carefully pull upwards.
› Also unlock the cover on the other side.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow 3.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Emergency operation of the sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 235
Activation after the waste and reconnecting the battery 235

Operation

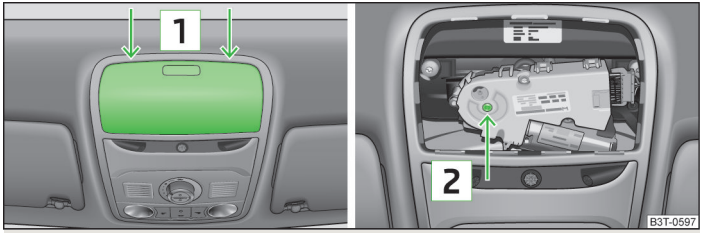


Fig. 198 **Point for positioning screwdriver/opening for positioning the key**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 235.

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed or opened manually if a fault occurs. The emergency operation of the sliding/tilting roof is located underneath the glasses storage box 1 » page 78, *Glasses storage box*.

› Open the glasses storage box.
› Carefully insert an approximately 5 mm wide screwdriver into the slot in the positions shown by the arrows 1 » Fig. 198.
› Carefully fold the glasses storage box downwards by gently pressing down and turning the screwdriver.
› Insert an Allen key, SW 4, up to the stop into the opening 2 and close or open the sliding/tilting roof.
› Reinstall the glasses storage box by first inserting the plastic plugs and then pushing the entire part upwards.

Have the fault on the sliding tilting roof rectified as soon as possible by a specialist garage.

Note

▪ It is necessary after each emergency operation to move the sliding/tilting roof into the basic position.[1] This is why the rotary switch must be set to the switch position A » Fig. 28 on page 44 and pressed forward for about 10 seconds.
▪ After each emergency operation, it is necessary to activate the roof[2] » page 235.

Activation after the waste and reconnecting the battery

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 235.

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (referred to form now on as just the sliding/tiling roof) and the sun screen must be activated after disconnecting and reconnecting the battery.

To activate the sliding/tilting roof, press the notch on the control dial downwards and forwards for approx. 10 seconds.

To activate the sun screen, press and hold the switch G » Fig. 30 on page 46 for approx. 10 seconds.

If the sliding/tilting roof or sun screen is not fully closed or pushed shut when disconnecting and reconnecting the battery, they must first be closed or pushed shut » page 46, *Opening/closing the sun screen* » page 46, *Operation*. Only then is it possible to perform the activation.

[1] Applies to emergency operation of the Superb sliding/tilting roof.
[2] Applies to emergency operation of the Superb Combi sliding/tilting roof.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades ____ 236
Replacing the rear window wiper blade ____ 236

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

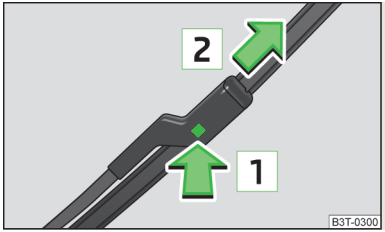


Fig. 199
Windscreen wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 236.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

› Closing the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position 4 and keep it held for around 2 seconds » Fig. 46 on page 60.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1.» Fig. 199.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Attaching the wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arms back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position 4 » Fig. 46 on page 60.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

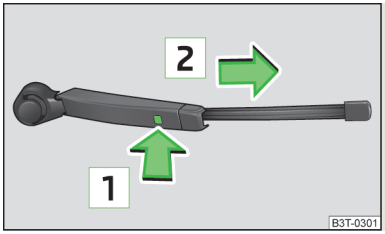


Fig. 200
Rear window wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 236.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism 1.» Fig. 200.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Attaching the wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel ____ 238
Fuses in the engine compartment ____ 239
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment ____ 239

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Replacing fuses

› Switch off the ignition and the appropriate consumer before changing a fuse.
› Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 238, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 239, *Fuse assignment in the engine compartment*.
› Take the plastic clip out of its fixture in the cover of the fuse box in the dash panel, place it on the relevant fuse and pull it out.
› A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 201.
- Never repair fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage – risk of fire! A different electrical system could be damaged.

CAUTION

- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. If the cover is not replaced properly, water may get into the fuse box - leading to a risk of vehicle damage!

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- There can be several consumer devices for one fuse, depending on the vehicle's equipment.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.
- Multiple power consuming devices can share a single fuse.

Fuses in the dash panel

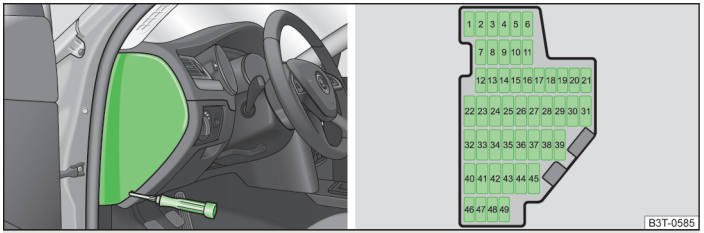


Fig. 201 **Fuse box cover/Schematic diagram of the fuse box**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 237.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 201.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Re-insert the cover of the fuse box .

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

No.	Power consumer
1	Diagnostic socket, engine control unit, fuel pump relay, fuel pump control unit
2	ABS control unit, ESC switch for tyre pressure warning, brake sensor, for START-STOP coil of the starter relay only
3	Switch and airbag control unit
4	WIV, tail lights, dimming mirrors, pressure sensor, telephone preinstallation
5	Control unit for headlight beam adjustment and headlight swivel, control unit for parking aid, control unit for park assist
6	Instrument cluster, control unit for electromechanical power steering, selector lever lock, power supply for data bus, AG
7	Heated opening of the crankcase ventilation, air flow meter
8	Control unit for trailer detection
9	Relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
10	Adaptive left main headlight
11	Adaptive right main headlight
12	Not assigned
13	Diagnostic socket, light switch, rain sensor, clock
14	Central locking system and bonnet lid
15	Central control unit - interior lights
16	The air conditioning system
17	Not assigned
18	Phone
19	Instrument cluster, wind-shield wiper lever and turn signal lever, the relay coil for heating wind-shield
20	KESSY
21	KESSY ELV
22	Air blower for Climatronic
23	Front power window, central locking of the front doors
24	Selector lever lock, AG
25	Rear window heater, relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
26	Power socket in the boot
27	Fuel pump relay, control unit for fuel pump, injection valves
28	Electric boot lid
29	AG, Haldex
30	Climate controlled front seats
31	DVD pre-installation
32	Front power window, central locking system of the rear doors
33	Electric sliding/tilting roof
34	Alarm, spare horn
35	front and rear lighter
36	Headlight cleaning system
37	Heated front seats
38	Heated rear seats
39	Rear window wiper

No.	Power consumer
40	Fan air-conditioning system, relay for auxiliary heating and ventilation
41	Not assigned
42	Light switch
43	Control unit for trailer detection
44	Control unit for trailer detection
45	Control unit for trailer detection
46	Switch for seat heating
47	Telephone preinstallation
48	Preparation for the aftermarket radio
49	Only for START-STOP: Central control unit, DC-DC converter, the engine control unit

Fuses in the engine compartment

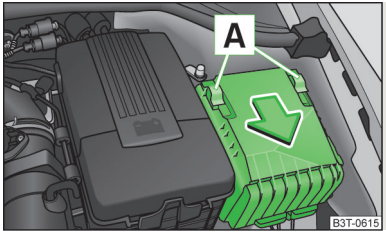


Fig. 202
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 237.

On some vehicles, the battery cover must be removed before removing the cover for the fuse box » page 211.

Replacing fuses

› The safety catch of the cover of the fuse box A » Fig. 202 Move the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the clip.

› Remove the cover.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Replace the cover on the fuse box and the safety clip A move against the arrow.

The symbol is displayed behind the clip.

The cover is locked into position.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment

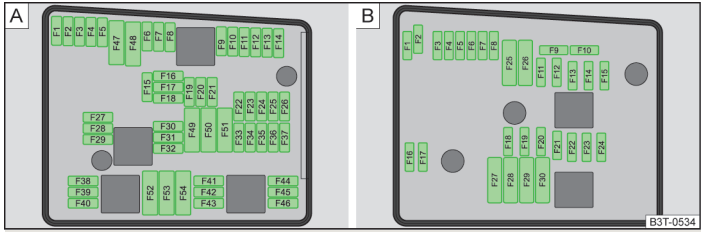


Fig. 203 **Schematic diagram of the fuse box - version A/version B**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 237.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment - version A

No.	Power consumer
1	Front right main headlight, right tail light
2	Valves for ABS
3-4	Not assigned
5	Horn
6-12	Not assigned
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
14	Not assigned
15	Coolant pump
16	Not assigned
17	Instrument cluster, windscreen wiper lever, and turn signal lever
18	Audio amplifier (sound system)
19	Radio

No.	Power consumer
20-22	Not assigned
23	Engine control unit
24	Data bus control unit
25-26	Not assigned
27	Fuel dosage valve
28	Engine control unit
29	Main relay
30	Auxiliary heating and ventilation control unit
31	Windscreen wipers
32-37	Not assigned
38	Radiator fan, valves
39	Clutch/brake pad sensor
40	Lambda probe
41	AKF valve
42	Lambda probe
43	Ignition
44-46	Not assigned
47	Front left main headlight, left tail light
48	Pump for ABS
49	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on)
50-51	Not assigned
52	Power supply relay - terminal X[a)]
53	Power to the internal fuse carrier
54	Not assigned

[a)] In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment - version B

No.	Power consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
3	Measuring circuit
4	Valves for ABS
5	Control unit for automatic gearbox DSG
6	Not assigned
7	Power supply relay - terminal X[a)]
8	Radio
9	Not assigned
10	Engine control unit, Main relay
11	Auxiliary heating and ventilation control unit
12	Data bus control unit
13	Engine control unit
14	Ignition
15	Lambda probe (petrol engine), glow plug system relay and fuel pump (diesel engine)
16	Front right main headlight, right tail light
17	Horn
18	Audio amplifier (sound system)
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Valve for metering fuel, coolant pump, high pressure pump
21	Lambda probe
22	Clutch pedal switch
23	Coil of the coolant pump relay valves, high-pressure pump
24	Radiator fan
25	Pump for ABS
26	Front left main headlight, left tail light
27	Control unit for glow plug system
28	Windscreen heater
29	Power to the internal fuse carrier
30	Power supply for terminal 15 (ignition on)

[a)] In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Headlights 241
Replacing bulb for low beam 242
Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights 242
Replacing bulb for low beam 242
Replacing the bulb for the fog light 243
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light 243
Rear light (Superb Combi) 244
Replacing bulbs in rear light (Superb Combi) 244

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 201.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!
- The relevant lamp must always be switched off before a light bulb is replaced.

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- When removing and installing the number plate light and tail light make sure that the paintwork of the vehicle and the tail light are not damaged.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main, low or fog beam.
- Gas discharge bulbs and LED diodes are replaced by a specialist garage.

Headlights

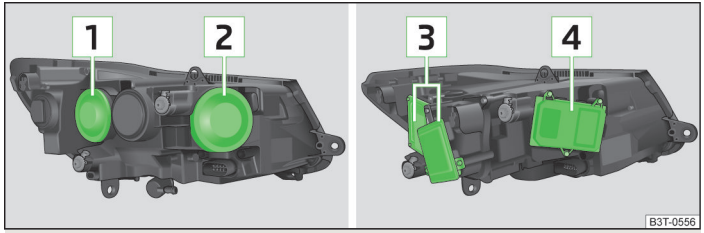


Fig. 204 **Bulb arrangement: Headlight with halogen bulb/with Xenon bulb**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

Headlight with halogen bulb

1 Low beam
2 Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light

Headlights with Xenon light

3 Xenon gas discharge bulbs
4 Main beam

Replacing bulb for low beam

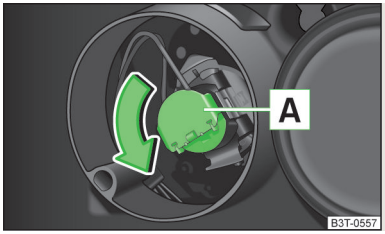


Fig. 205
Halogen headlight: Changing the bulb for the low beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

› Remove the rubber cover 1 » Fig. 204 on page 241.
› Turn the plug with bulb A » Fig. 205 **counter** - clockwise and remove it.
› Change the bulb.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn **in** a clockwise direction until the stop.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights

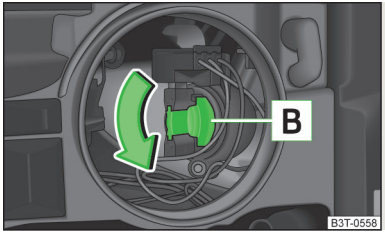


Fig. 206
Halogen headlight: Replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

› Remove the rubber cover 2 » Fig. 204 on page 241.
› Turn the bulb holder B » Fig. 206 **anti**-clockwise up to the stop and remove.
› Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn **in** a clockwise direction to the stop.
› Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing bulb for low beam

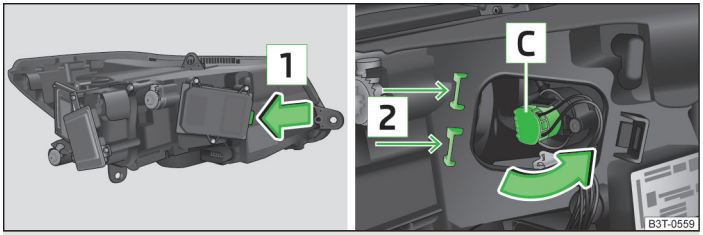


Fig. 207 **Headlights with Xenon light: Changing the bulb for the main beam**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

› Unlock the protective cap in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 207 and remove.
› Turn the plug with bulb C **counter-** clockwise until the stop and remove it.
› Change the bulb.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn **in** a clockwise direction until the stop.
› Insert the protective cap in holder 2 and carefully push in.
› The protective cover must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the fog light

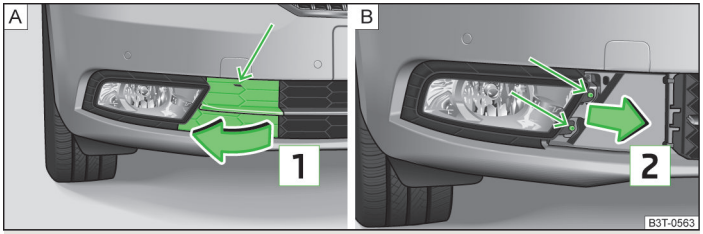


Fig. 208 **Front bumper: Remove the protective grille/fog light**

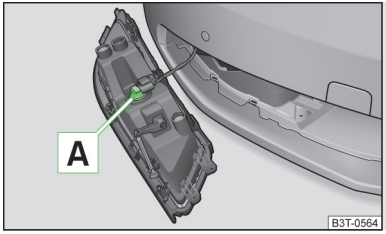


Fig. 209
Replacing the light bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

Removing the protective grille

› Release the protective grille in the area of the arrow » Fig. 208 - A using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 222, *Car tool*.
› Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow 1.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the fog lamp » Fig. 208 - B.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Turn bulb holder A » Fig. 209 in an **anti**-clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn **in** a clockwise direction as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.
› Replace the fog lamp by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 208 - B and tighten.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

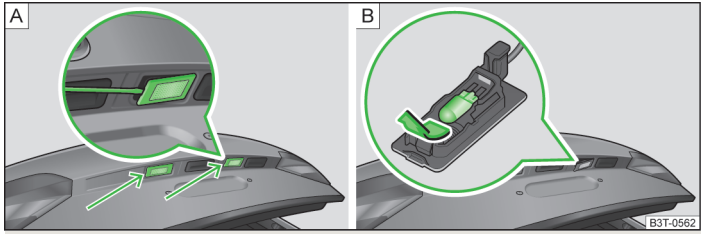


Fig. 210 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

Change

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert a slotted screwdriver at the location indicated by the arrow » Fig. 210 - A, press it in lightly, and unlatch the springs.
› Remove the lamp.
› Pull the faulty bulb out of the holder in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 210 - B.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Replace the lamp and lightly press it until the spring latches.

Rear light (Superb Combi)

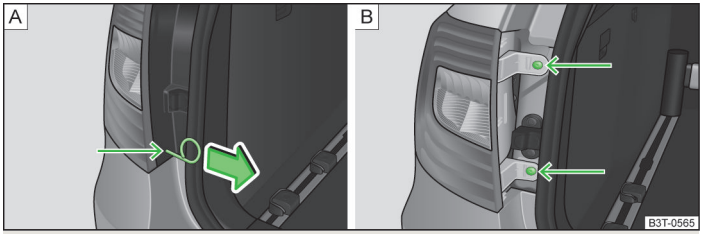


Fig. 211 **Remove cover/light**

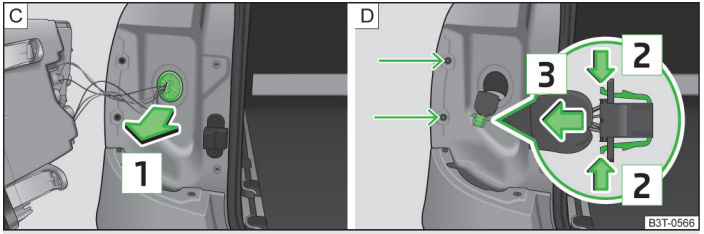


Fig. 212 **Seal expand / lighting connector**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 222, *Car tool* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 211 - A.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 211 - A.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 211 - B.
› Grasp the rear light and carefully remove away from the direction of travel.
› Remove the rubber seal in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 212 - C .
› Pull off the cable bundle with the plug cap » Fig. 212 - D .
› Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 212 - D.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 3.

Install

› Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
› Install the rubber seal in the body in the opposite direction to arrow 1 install » Fig. 212 - C .
› Insert the tail lamp with the holes 1 » Fig. 213 on page 244 into the bolts on the body » Fig. 212 - D .
› Carefully press the tail light into the bolts on the bodywork.

Be careful not to pinch the cable bundle between the bodywork and light.

› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
› Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Superb Combi)

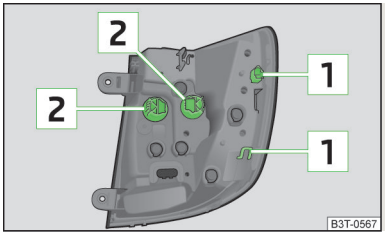


Fig. 213
Replacing the light bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 241.

› Turn the bulb holder 2 » Fig. 213 **anti**-clockwise remove it from the lamp housing.
› Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the the stop.
› Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn **in** a clockwise direction to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle identification data 245
Dimensions 247
Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type 248
Multi-purpose vehicles (AF) 252

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

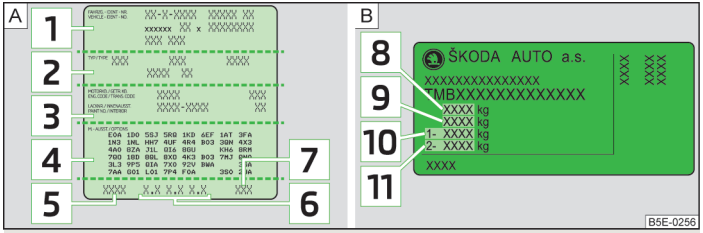


Fig. 214 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 245.

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 214 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Operating weight (in kg)
6 Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) - intra-urban/extra-urban/combined
7 CO_2 emission levels - combined (in g/km)

Type plate
The nameplate » Fig. 214 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the driver's side.

The type plate lists the following weights:

8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

Engine number
The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

Operating weight
The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight » !.

The payload consists of the following components:
› Passengers
› All items of luggage and other loads
› Roof load including roof rack system
› Equipment not included in the operating weight
› Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 80 kg).

Fuel consumption according to the ECE standards and EU guidelines
The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards standard urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

i Note

▪ If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.
▪ Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.

Dimensions

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 245.

Vehicle dimensions (mm)

	Superb	Superb GreenLine	Superb Combi	Superb Combi GreenLine
Length	4833	4833	4833	4833
Width	1817	1817	1817	1817
Width including exterior mirror	2009	2009	2009	2009
Height	1462/1482[a]/1447[b]	1464/1449[b]	1511/1529[a]/1497[b]	1511/1496[b]
Clearance	139/159[a]/124[b]/141[c]	140/125[b]	141/159[a]/127[b]/140[c]	141/126[b]
Wheel base	2761	2761	2761	2761
Track gauge front/rear	1545/1518 (1537/1510)[c]	1545/1518	1545/1517 (1537/1510)[c]	1545/1517

[a] Applies to vehicles with a rough road package.
[b] Applies to vehicles with a sport chassis.
[c] Applies to vehicles with a 3.6 l/191 kW FSI engine.

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 245.

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
92/5000	200/1500-4000	4/1390
Performances	**Superb MG6**	**Superb Combi MG6**
Top speed (km/h)	204	203
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.5	10.6
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1400[a]/1500[b]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	730	740

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %

1.8 ltr/112 kW TSI1.8 ltr/118 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
112/4300-6200	250/1500-4200	4/1798
118/4500-6200[a]	250/1500-4500[a]	

Performances	Superb MG6	Superb DSG7	Superb MG6 4x4	Superb Combi MG6	Superb Combi DSG7	Superb Combi MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)	219/222[a]	218	215	217	216	213
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.8 / 8.4[a]	8.7	8.8	8.9	8.8	8.9
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500[b]/1700[c]		1600[b]/1800[c]	1500[b]/1700[c]		1600[b]/1800[c]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

[a] Applies to India
[b] Uphills up to 12 %
[c] Uphills up to 8 %

1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		
118/4500-6200	250/1500-4500			4/1798		
Performances	**Superb MG6**	**Superb DSG7**	**Superb MG6 4x4**	**Superb Combi MG6**	**Superb Combi DSG7**	**Superb Combi MG6 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	222	222	219	221	221	218
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.2	8.4	8.4	8.3	8.5	8.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500[a]/1700[b]		1600[a]/1800[b]	1500[a]/1700[b]		1600[a]/1800[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./147 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
147/5100-6000	280/1700-5000	4/1984
Performances	**Superb DSG6**	**Superb Combi DSG6**
Top speed (km/h)	240	238
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.7	7.8
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600[a]/1800[b]	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750	

[a] Uphills up to 12 %
[b] Uphills up to 8 %

3.6 ltr/191 kW FSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)
191/6000	350/2500-5000	6/3597
Performances	**Superb DSG6 4x4**	**Superb DSG6 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	250	250
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.4	6.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	2000	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750	

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)		Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)	
77/4400	250/1500-2500		4/1598	
Performances	**Superb MG6**	**Superb DSG7**	**Superb Combi MG6**	**Superb Combi DSG7**
Top speed (km/h)	194/197[a)]	193	192/195[a)]	192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.1 / 12.2[a)]	12.2	12.2 / 12.3[a)]	12.3
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500[b)]/1700[c)]	1200[b)]/1400[c)]	1500[b)]/1700[c)]	1200[b)]/1400[c)]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750			

[a)] GreenLine
[b)] Uphills up to 12 %
[c)] Uphills up to 8 %

2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		
103/4200	320/1750-2500			4/1968		
Performances	**Superb MG6**	**Superb DSG6**	**Superb MG6 4x4**	**Superb Combi MG6**	**Superb Combi DSG6**	**Superb Combi MG6 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	212	212	210	211	210	208
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.0	10.1	10.3	10.1	10.2	10.4
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800		2000	1800		2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)			Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm^3)		
125/4200	350/1750-2500			4/1968		
Performances	**Superb MG6**	**Superb DSG6**	**Superb DSG6 4x4**	**Superb Combi MG6**	**Superb Combi DSG6**	**Superb DSG6 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	228	222	219	226	221	218
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.6	8.6	8.7	8.7	8.7	8.8
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1800		2000	1800		2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	750					

Multi-purpose vehicles (AF)

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 245.

Engine	Maximum permissible gross weight (kg)		
1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI	MG6		
	2032		
1.8 ltr./118 kW TSI	MG6	DSG7	MG6 4x4
	2061	2073	2152
2.0 l/147 kW FSI	DSG6		
	2105		
3.6 l/191 kW FSI	DSG6 4x4		
	2267		
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG7	
	2077/2084[a)]	2084	
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG6	MG6 4x4
	2097	2119	2174
2.0 ltr./125 kW TDI CR	MG6	DSG6	DSG6 4x4
	2105	2122	2199

a) GreenLine

Index

A

Abroad
Driving abroad 145
Unleaded petrol 145
ABS
Operation 148
Warning lighte 17
Accessories 196
Adaptive headlights (AFS) 51
Adjusting
External mirrors 64
Interior mirror 63
Seats 65
Adjusting the seats 65, 168
Adjustment
Headlight beam 48
Headrests 67
Seats 66
Aerial 189
AFS 51
Airbag 176
Deactivating 181
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 182
Deployment 176
Front airbag 178
Head airbag 180
Knee airbag 179
Modifications and damage to the airbag system 198
Side airbag 179
Airbag system 176
Air conditioning system
Air outlets 96
Climatronic 100
Manual air conditioning system 97
Air outlets 96
Alarm
Switching off 35
Triggering 35
Anti-theft alarm system
Activating/deactivating 36
Trailer 165
Antilock Braking System 148
Armrest
Front 71
Rear 71, 81
Artificial leather 195
Ashtray 76
ASR
Operation 148
Warning light 16
Assist systems 147
ABS 17, 148
ASR 16, 148
Cruise control system 155
DSR 148
EDL 148
ESC 17, 147
HBA 149
HHC 149
Park assist 151
Parking aid 149
START-STOP 156
Auto Check Control 12
Automatic driving lamp control 50
Automatic gearbox
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 234
Automatic load deactivation 213
Automatic retractable cargo cover (Superb Combi) 87
Automatic transmission 136
Kickdown 139
Manual gear changing on the multifunction steering wheel 138
Operational faults 139
Selector lever lock 138
Selector lever operation 137
Starting off and driving 138
Tiptronic 138
AUX-IN
Installation in the storage compartment 77
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 103
Radio remote control 105
Setting 104
Switching on/off 104
Avoiding damage to the vehicle
Driving through water 145
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 144

B

Battery
Replace the remote control of the heater (heater) 233
Replacing the remote control key 232
Belts 171
Belt tensioners 174
Bonnet
Closing 203
Opening 203
Warning light 15
Boot 82
Automatic retraction(Superb Combi) 87
Class N1 vehicles 84
Cover 86
Extending variable loading floor 89
Fasteners 84
Fixing floor covering 85
Fixing nets 84
Folding hook 85
Lighting 82
Luggage net 85
Non-closable side pocket (Superb Combi) 88
Removable lamp (Combi) 57
Roll-up boot cover (Superb Combi) 86
see Tailgate 37

Side compartments with battery 88
Side pockets 87
Boot cover 86
Boot cover (Superb Combi) 86
Brake booster 135
Brake fluid 208
Changing 209
Checking 209
Brake pads
Warning light 20
Brakes
Brake assist systems 147
Brake booster 135
Brake fluid 209
Handbrake 135
Running in 140
Warning lights 14
Braking 134
Information for braking 134
Breakdown kit 226
Break recommendation
See Fatigue detection 158
Bulbs
Change 241
Button in the driver's door
Electric power windows 41

C

Car Computer
see Multi-function display 22
Car key
Lock 30
Unlock 30
Car park ticket holder 73
Carrier 93
Car tool 222
Cavity protection 193
CD changer 126
Central locking button 33
Change
Bulbs 241
fuses 237
Changing
Brake fluid 209
Engine oil 206
Wheels 222
Changing a wheel
Follow-up work 224
Preliminary work 223
Remove and attaching a wheel 223
Charging a vehicle battery 212
Checking
Battery electrolyte level 211
Brake fluid 209
Coolant 208
Engine oil 206
Oil level 206
Properly attaching the tow bar 162
Windscreen washer fluid 204
Children and safety 184
Child safety
Side airbag 185
Child safety lock 33
Child seat
Classification 186
ISOFIX 187
on the front passenger seat 185
TOP TETHER 188
Use of child seats 186
Use of ISOFIX child seats 187
Chrome parts
refer to Taking care of your vehicle 192
Cigarette lighter 76
Clean
Alcantara 195
Artificial leather 195
Fabric 195
Cleaning 189
Covers of electrically heated seats 195
Headlight lenses 192
Natural leather 194
Plastic parts 191
Wheels 193
Climatronic 100
automatic mode 101
Control elements 100
Controlling blower 102
Cooling system 101
Defrosting windscreen 103
Recirculation 102
Setting the temperature 101
Clock 12
Clothes hook 80
Cockpit
12-volt power outlet 77
Ashtray 76
Cigarette lighter 76
General view 7
Lights 54
Practical features 73
Storage compartments 73
COMING HOME 52
Compartments 73
Computer
see Multi-function display 22
Convenience operation of sliding/tilting roof 45
Convenience operation of sliding/tilting roof (Superb Combi) 47
Coolant 207
Checking 208
Replenishing 208
Temperature display 9
Correct seated position 168
Driver 169
Front passenger 169
Instructions 169
Rear seats 169
Counter for distance driven 10
Cruise control system 155
Activating/deactivating 155
Changing the stored speed 156

Storing and maintaining speed 155
Temporarily deactivating 156
Cup holders 75

D

Dayl. dri. lights 49
De-icing the windscreen and rear window 58
Deactivating an airbag 181
Decorative films 192
Delayed locking of the tailgate
see Tailgate 38
Diesel
refer to Fuel 200
Diesel fuel
Operation in winter 200
Diesel particle filter 18
Digital clock 12
Dipstick 206
Display 10
Coolant temperature 9
Service interval 11
Distance driven 10
Door
Child safety lock 33
Closing 34
Emergency locking the driver's door 233
Indicator light for an open door 14
Opening 34
Door locking
Emergency 234
Doors
Emergency locking 234
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) 148
Driving
Abroad 145
Driving through water on roads 145
Emissions 245
Fuel consumption 245
Driving economically
Economical gear changing. 141
Driving through water 145
DSR 148
DVD-preinstallation 126

E

Economical driving 140
Ballast 143
Driving at full throttle 142
Idling 142
Looking ahead 141
Regular maintenance 143
Saving energy 143
Short distances 142
Tyre inflation pressure 142
EDL 148
Electrical power windows 43
Button in the driver's door 41, 42
Button in the rear doors 42
Electric sliding/tilting roof 44
Electric tailgate
Acoustic signals 40
Adjusting the top lid position 40
Deleting the top lid position 40
Force limit 38
Malfunctions 41
Manually actuate 38
Operating 39
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 148
Electronic immobiliser 130
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 147
Emergency
Activation of the sliding/tilting roof 235
Automatic gearbox 234
Changing a wheel 222
Door locking 234
Hazard warning light system 53
jump-starting 229
Locking the driver's door 233
Sliding/tilting roof 235
Starting the engine - KESSY 134
Switching off the ignition –KESSY 134
Towing the using the towing device 231
Towing the vehicle 230
Tyre repair 226
Unlocking the boot lid 234
Unlocking the driver's door 233
Emergency equipment
Car tool 222
Fire extinguisher 221
First aid kit 221
Jack 222
Warning triangle 221
Emissions 245
Engine
Running in 140
Engine compartment 201
Brake fluid 209
Coolant 207
Overview 203
Vehicle battery 209
Engine oil 204
Capacity 205
Changing 206
checking 206
Replenishing 206
Specifications 205
Engine revolutions counter 9
Entry lighting 56
Environment 140
Environmental compatibility 143
Environmentally friendly driving 140
ESC
Operation 147
Warning light 17
Extending variable loading floor 89
Fixing set 91
Movable lashing eyes 92
Partial extension 90

F

Fasteners 84
Fatigue detection 158
Information messages 159
Operation 159
Films 192
Fire extinguisher 221
First aid kit 221
Floor covering
Fixing 85
Fog lights 52
Fog lights with the CORNER function 52
Folding hook 85
Footmats 136
Footmats 136
See Footmats 136
Force limit
Electric tailgate (Superb Combi) 38
Power windows 43
Sliding/tilting roof 44
Sliding/tilting roof (Superb Combi) 46
Front airbag 178
Front door warning light 56
Front interior light 54
Fuel 199
Diesel 200
Fuel gauge 10
gauge 10
refer to Fuel 199
Refuelling 199
Unleaded petrol 200
Fuel consumption 140
Fuses
Colour-coding 237
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment 239
Occupancy 237

G

Gear
Recommended gear 22
Gear changing
Energy-efficient driving 141
Gearshift lever 136
General view
Cockpit 7
Glasses storage box 78
Glow plug system
Warning light 18
GSM 109, 112

H

Handbrake 135
Hands-free system
Voice control 120
Hazard warning light system 53
HBA 149
Head airbag 180
Headlight cleaning system
Headlight cleaning system 61
Headlights
Driving abroad 146
Headlight cleaning system 61
Replacing a bulb 241
Headrest 67
Heater
Windscreen and rear window 58
Heating
External mirrors 64
Seats 69
HHC 149
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 149
Horn 7
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 149

I

Ignition
see Ignition lock 130
Ignition lock 130
Immobiliser 130
Individual settings
Lock 32
Unlock 32
Inertia reels 174
Information display
see MAXI DOT 26
Information message
see KESSY 34
Instrument cluster 8
Display 10
Overview 8
Interior monitor 36
Internet connection 116
ISOFIX 187

J

Jack 222
Jacking points
Raise vehicle 225
Jump-starting 229

K

KESSY
Information message 34
Lock 34
Starting the engine 133
Switching off the engine 133
Switching off the ignition 133
Switching on the ignition 133
Unlock 34
Unlocking/locking the steering 132

Key
Starting the engine 130
Switching off the engine 131
Knee airbag 179

L

LEAVING HOME 52
Lever
Main beam 50
Turn signal 50
Windscreen wipers 60
Light
Bulb replacement 241
Light bulbs
Rear light (Superb Combi) 244
Lighting
Boot 82
Lights 48
Adaptive headlights (AFS) 51
Automatic driving lamp control 50
Cockpit 54
COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME 52
Dayl. dri. lights 49
Fog lights 52
Fog lights with the CORNER function 52
Hazard warning light system 53
Headlight beam adjustment 48
Headlight flasher 50
Instrument lighting 48
Low beam lights 48
Main beam 50
Parking lights 48, 54
Rear fog light 52
Switching on and off 48
Tourist lights 51
Travel mode 51
Turn signal 50
Warning lights 13
Loads 245
Lock
Car key 30
Individual settings 32
Remote Control 30
Locking
KESSY 31
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside 33
Low beam lights 48
Luggage compartment
Emergency unlocking 234
Unlocking the boot lid 234
Variable loading floor 88
Luggage net 85

M

Main beam 50
Maintenance 143
Decorative films 192
Manual air conditioning
Control elements 97
Recirculated air mode 99
Setting 99
Manual gear changing
See Gear changing 136
MAXI DOT 26
Main menu 26
Settings 27
MDI
Installation in the storage compartment 77
Mirror
Additional interior mirror 63
Mirrors
External mirrors 64
Interior mirror 63
Vanity 58
Mobile phone 106, 109, 112
Connecting to the hands-free system 109, 113
Modes of automatic transmission 137
Modifications 196
Modifications and technical alterations
Airbags 198
Service 197
Spoiler 197
Multi-function display
Functions 22
Operation 23
Multifunction display
Memory 24
Multimedia 124
AUX-IN 125
MDI 125

N

Nameplate 245
Net partition 92
Behind the front seats 93
Behind the rear seats 92
Removing and refitting the housing 93
Nets 84
Non-closable side pocket (Superb Combi) 88

O

Oil
see Engine oil 206
Onboard computer
see Multi-function display 22
Open/close tailgate
(Superb Combi) 38
Operation in winter
De-icing windows 192
Diesel fuel 200
Operation in Winter
Vehicle battery 211
Outside temperature 23
Overview
Engine compartment 203

P

Paintwork
See Paintwork care 191
Paintwork care 191
Panoramic sunroof (Combi)
Closing 45
Opening 45
Sunblind 45
Tilting 45
Park assist 151
Finding a parking space 152
Information messages 154
Parking 152
Parking
Automatic brake assist 153
Departing from a parallel parking space 153
Park assist 151
Parking aid 149
Parking aid 149
Operation 150
Visual parking system 150
Parking lights 48
Parking vehicle 35
Part replacement 196
Passive safety
before setting off 167
Driving safety 168
Safety equipment 167
Passive Safety 167
Pedals 136
Petrol
refer to Fuel 200
Polishing the paintwork
See Taking care of your vehicle 191
Power steering 129
Power windows
Button in the front passenger door 42
Operational faults 43
Practical features 73
12-volt power outlet 77
Ashtray 76
Car park ticket holder 73
Cigarette lighter 76
Clothes hook 80
Cup holders 75
Glasses storage box 78
Removable through-loading bag 82
Seat backrest with through-loading channel 81
Storage compartment for umbrella 80
Storage compartment in rear centre console 81
Storage compartment in the front centre console 74
Storage compartment on the driver's side 74
Storage compartment on the passenger side 79
Storage compartments in the doors 74
Storage compartment under the armrest 77
Storage compartment under the passenger seat 79
Storage net in the front centre console 78
Storage pockets on the front seats 80

R

Radiator fan 203
Radio remote control
Auxiliary heating (aux. heating) 105
Raise vehicle 225
Rear fog light 52
Rear interior light 55
Rear mirror 62
Interior mirror 63
Rear seats
Seat folded forward Combi 72
Rearview mirror
Mirrors 64
Rear window - heater 58
Recirculated air mode
Manual air conditioning 99
Recirculation
Climatronic 102
Recommended gear 22
Refuelling 199
Fuel 199
Remote control
Replacing the battery 232
Synchronisation process 233
Remote Control
Lock 30
Unlock 30
Remote control key
Replacing the battery 232
Removable lamp (Combi) 57
Removable lights (Combi)
Changing rechargeable light batteries 57
Removable light (Combi)
Remove the lamp 57
Removable through-loading bag 82
Repairs and technical alterations 196
Replace
fuses 237
replacing
Vehicle battery 212
Replacing
Bulb for low beam 242
Bulb for main beam and daytime running lights 242
Bulb for the fog light 243
Bulb for the licence plate light 243
Bulb in rear light (Superb Combi) 244
Fuses in the dash panel 238
Fuses in the engine compartment 239
Windscreen wiper blade 236
Replenishing
Coolant 208
Engine oil 206
Windscreen washer fluid 204
Roof luggage rack
Attachment points 94
Roof rack system 93
Roof load 94
Running-in
The first 1500 km 140

Running in
Brake pads 140
Engine 140
Tyres 140

S

Safe securing system 32
Safety 167
Child safety 184
Child safety seats 184
Correct seated position 168
Headrests 67
ISOFIX 187
TOP TETHER 188
Saving electrical energy 140
Screens
see Sun screen in the rear doors 59
Seals
Taking care of your vehicle 191
Seat
Convenience features of passenger seat 71
Seat belt
warning light 14
Seat belt height adjuster 174
Seat belts 171
Belt tensioners 174
Cleaning 196
fastening and unfastening 173
Height adjustment 174
Inertia reels 174
The physical principle of a frontal collision 172
Seat features 69
Seats
Electric adjustment 66
Front armrest 71
Headrests 67
Heating 69
Manually adjusting 66
Memory 68
Rear armrest 71
Seat backrests 72
Storing in memory of remote control key 68
Ventilated front seats 70
Seats and useful equipment 65
Adjusting the seats 65
Selector lever
See Selector lever operation 137
Selector lever operation 137
Service 197
Service display 11
Setting
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 104
Manual air conditioning 99
Steering wheel 129
Setting the clock
Clock 12
Shelves 73
Side airbag 179
Side compartments in the boot 87
Side compartments in the boot with battery 88
Sliding/tilting roof
Closing 44
Closing the sun screen (Superb Combi) 46
Closing (Superb Combi) 46
Emergency 235
Opening/closing the sun screen (Superb Combi) 46
Opening and closing 44
Opening and tilting (Superb Combi) 46
Operation 44
Operation (Superb Combi) 46
see Electric sliding/tilting roof 44
Snow chains 220
Socket
12 V 77
Spare wheel 218
Speedometer 9
Speed symbol
See Wheels 217
Spoiler 197
START-STOP 156
Manually activating/deactivating the system 158
Starting/shutting down the engine 157
System operating conditions 157
Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY 131
Starting and stopping the engine using the key 129
Starting the engine
Jump-starting 229
Key 130
see KESSY 133
START STOP
Information messages 158
Jump-starting 229
Steering force assistance 129
Steering wheel 129
Storage compartment in rear centre console 81
Storage compartment on the passenger side 79
Storage compartments 73
Storage compartment under the passenger seat 79
Storage pockets on the front seats 80
Storing skis 81
Sun screen 59
Sun screen in the rear doors 59
Sun visors 58
Switching lights on and off 48
Switching off the engine
Key 131
see KESSY 133
Switching off the ignition
see KESSY 133
Switching on the ignition
see KESSY 133

T

Tailgate 36, 37
Automatic locking 38
TwinDoor 37
Warning light 15

Taking care of the vehicle
Natural leather 194
Seat belts 196
Taking care of your vehicle 189
Alcantara 195
Artificial leather 195
Automatic car wash system 189
Cavity protection 193
Chrome parts 192
Cleaning the wheels 193
Decorative films 192
Door lock cylinders 193
Fabric 195
Fabric covers 195
Headlight lenses 192
High-pressure cleaner 190
Plastic parts 191
Polishing the paintwork 191
Rubber seals 191
Taking care of the interior 194
Taking care of your vehicle exterior 190
Washing 189
Washing by hand 189
Wash system 189
Wax treatment 191
Technical data 245
Telephone 109, 112
Through-loading bag 82
Through-loading channel 81
Tilting roof
see Electric sliding/tilting roof 44
Tiptronic 138
Tool 222
TOP TETHER 188
Tow bar
Checking secure attachment 162
Fitting 161
Ready position 161
Removing 162
Towing 230
Towing a trailer 160
Towing device
Description 160
Drawbar load 160
Use and care 163
Towing eye
Front 231
Rear 231
Towing protection 36
Traction Control System (ASR 148
Trailer 160, 163
13-pin power socket 164
driving with a trailer 164
Loading 163
Safety eyelet 164
Trailer stabilisation 165
Transport
Boot 82
Roof rack system 93
Transporting children safely 184
Triangle 221
Turn signal 50
TwinDoor
see Tailgate 37
Two-way radio systems 106
Tyre load-bearing capacity
See Wheels 216
Tyre pressure monitor
Setting 217
Tyre repair
Check pressure 228
Preparations 227
Sealing and inflating the tyre 227
Tyres 214
Inflation pressure 215
New 216
See Wheels 216
Sizes 215
Wear Indicator 215

U

Umbrella
Tray 80
Underbody protection 193
Unlock
Car key 30
Individual settings 32
Remote Control 30
Unlocking
KESSY 31
Unlocking and locking 29
Unlocking and locking the steering
see KESSY 132

V

Variable loading floor 88
Can be extended with aluminium strips 89
Dividing the boot 89, 90
Removing 89
Removing and refitting 91
Vehicle battery
Automatic load deactivation 213
charging 212
Checking the electrolyte level 211
Cover 211
Disconnecting and reconnecting 213
Operation in Winter 211
replacing 212
Safety instructions 209
Vehicle Condition
see Auto Check Control 12
Vehicle data sticker 245
Vehicle dimensions 247
Vehicle height 247
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 245
Vehicle length 247
Vehicle width 247
Visibility 58

Visors
see Sun screen 59
see Sun visors 58

W

Warning lights 13
Warning triangle 221
Washing 189
Automatic car wash system 189
by hand 189
Chrome parts 192
High-pressure cleaner 190
Water
Driving through water 145
Wax treatment
See Taking care of your vehicle 191
Weights 245
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolt 225
Caps 219
Loosening and tightening 224
Wheel rims 214
Wheels
Bolts 220
Changing 222
Full trim 219
General information 214
Load index 216
Replacing wheels 215
Service life of wheels 215
Snow chains 220
Spare wheel 218
Speed symbol 217
Storing wheels 215
Tyre pressure 215
Tyre sizes 215
Tyre wear indicator 215
Unidirectional tyres 217
Winter tyres 220
Wheels and tyres
Hubcaps 219
Wi-Fi 116
Information display 117
Network connection 117
Switching off 116
Switching on 116
Window convenience operation 43
Windows
De-icing 192
See electric power windows 41
Windscreen
Heater 58
Windscreen washer fluid
Checking 204
Replenishing 204
Warning light 20
Winter 204
Windscreen washers
Windscreen washers 60
Windscreen washer system 204
Windscreen wiper
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 236
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 236
Windscreen wipers
Cleaning the windscreen wiper blades 236
Operating 60
Windscreen washer fluid 204
Windscreen wipers and washers 59
Windshield wiper
alternative parking position of the rear windscreen wiper 61
Winter operation 220
Snow chains 220
Winter tyres 220
Winter tyres
See Wheels 220

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or might only be offered in certain markets; information is provided by ŠKODA Partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2013

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Andriod systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review



Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

› Navigation through the **list of content**
› Classical **reading page by page**
› **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
› **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters



Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

Minimisation of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions
- Start-stop system*
- Recovery*
- Indication of recommended gear*

Weight reduction
- Optimisation of high-strength panels, reduction of thickness in panels and other materials
- Replacement of spare wheel with tyre repair kit

Reduction of energy consumption
- Use of energy-saving electromechanical steering instead of hydraulic type
- Optimisation of efficiency of generators
- Optimisation of operating consumption and electrical current consumption

Optimisation of aerodynamic- and rolling resistance
- Additional aerodynamic spoilers*
- Additional covers at rack (CD covers)*
- Optimised cooling (input grid, additional seal)*
- Reduction by 15 mm* with frame
- Ro-Wi tyres (wheels with low rolling resistance)*

Recyclability
- All models currently in production homologised in conformity with the requirements for recyclability (EU Directive 2005/64/EC)
- Use of recyclable, environmentally-friendly materials
- Use of recycled materials with the parameters of the new material preferred
- Labelling of materials for the purpose of making sorting easy



* realised in the GreenLine series

The green seal represents ŠKODA AUTO commitment to environmentally responsible behaviour. It expresses responsible engagement towards the environment and sustainable development.

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked ♻ below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Superb anglicky 05.2013
S74.5610.09.20
3T0 012 003 NP